

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	Before driving	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	When driving	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	Interior features	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	Maintenance and care	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	When trouble arises	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	Vehicle specifications	Detailed vehicle information.
7	For US owners	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners.
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

1 Before driving

1-1. Hybrid system..... 2
 Hybrid system..... 2

1-2. Key information 11
 Keys 11

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk 13
 Smart access system with push-button start 13
 Wireless remote control..... 22
 Doors..... 25
 Trunk..... 29

1-4. Adjustable components 33
 Front seats..... 33
 Driving position memory system 35
 Head restraints..... 38
 Seat belts 40
 Steering wheel..... 46
 Inside rear view mirror..... 47
 Outside rear view mirrors..... 48

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof..... 50
 Power windows..... 50
 Moon roof 52

1-6. Refueling..... 55
 Opening the fuel tank cap..... 55

1-7. Theft deterrent system..... 59
 Hybrid vehicle immobilizer system 59
 Alarm..... 61
 Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)..... 63

1-8. Safety information..... 64
 Correct driving posture 64
 SRS airbags 66
 Front passenger occupant classification system..... 77
 Child restraint systems 82
 Installing child restraints..... 85

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures..... 96
 Driving the vehicle..... 96
 Starting the hybrid system..... 103
 Transmission 106
 Turn signal lever..... 110
 Parking brake 111

2-2. Instrument cluster 112
 Gauges and meters 112
 Indicators and warning lights 116
 Multi-information display..... 119

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers	122
Headlight switch	122
Fog light switch	125
Windshield wipers and washer	126
Headlight cleaner switch	128
2-4. Using other driving systems	129
Cruise control	129
Dynamic radar cruise control	132
Intuitive parking assist	141
Rear view monitor system	160
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)	163
Driving assist systems	164
PCS (Pre-Collision System)	169
2-5. Driving information	172
Cargo and luggage	172
Vehicle load limits	175
Winter driving tips	176
Trailer towing	181
Dinghy towing	182

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the touch screen	184
Touch screen	184
Setting the touch screen	187
3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger	192
Automatic air conditioning system	192
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers	199
3-3. Using the audio system	200
Audio system type	200
Using the radio	203
Using the cassette player	212
Using the CD player	216
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	224
Using the DVD player	232
Playing DVD video/audio	235
Playing video CD	247
DVD player and DVD video disc information	251
Optimal use of the audio/video system	255
Using the steering switches	259

3-4. Using the hands-free system..... 261
 Hands-free system 261
 Using the Bluetooth® phone 265
 Setting the hands-free system 278

3-5. Using the interior lights 303
 Interior lights list..... 303

3-6. Using the storage features..... 306
 List of storage features..... 306

3-7. Other interior features..... 312
 Sun visors..... 312
 Vanity mirror 313
 Clock..... 314
 Outside temperature display 315
 Ashtrays 316
 Cigarette lighter 317
 Power outlet 318
 Seat heaters..... 319
 Seat heaters and ventilators..... 321
 Armrest 323
 Rear sunshade..... 324
 Floor mats..... 326
 Trunk features..... 327
 Garage door opener..... 329
 Compass..... 334
 Lexus Link System 338

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care..... 352
 Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 352
 Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior..... 354

4-2. Maintenance..... 357
 Maintenance requirements 357
 General maintenance..... 359
 Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 362

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 363
 Do-it-yourself service precautions 363
 Hood..... 366
 Positioning the jack 367
 Engine compartment..... 369
 Tires 383
 Tire inflation pressure..... 393
 Wheels..... 397
 Air conditioning filter..... 399
 Electronic key battery 401
 Checking and replacing fuses 403
 Headlight aim..... 419
 Light bulbs 421

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information	428
If your vehicle needs to be towed.....	428
If you think something is wrong	435
Event data recorder	436
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency	438
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds.....	438
If a warning message is displayed.....	444
If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with run-flat tires)	460
If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with standard tires).....	461
If the hybrid system will not start	471
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P	472
If you lose your keys	473
When the electronic key battery is discharged	474
If the 12 volt battery is discharged	476
If your vehicle overheats	480
If the vehicle becomes stuck.....	483

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications	486
Maintenance data.....	486
Fuel information.....	495
Tire information	498
6-2. Customization	510
Customizable features	510
6-3. Initialization	514
Items to initialize	514

7 For US owners

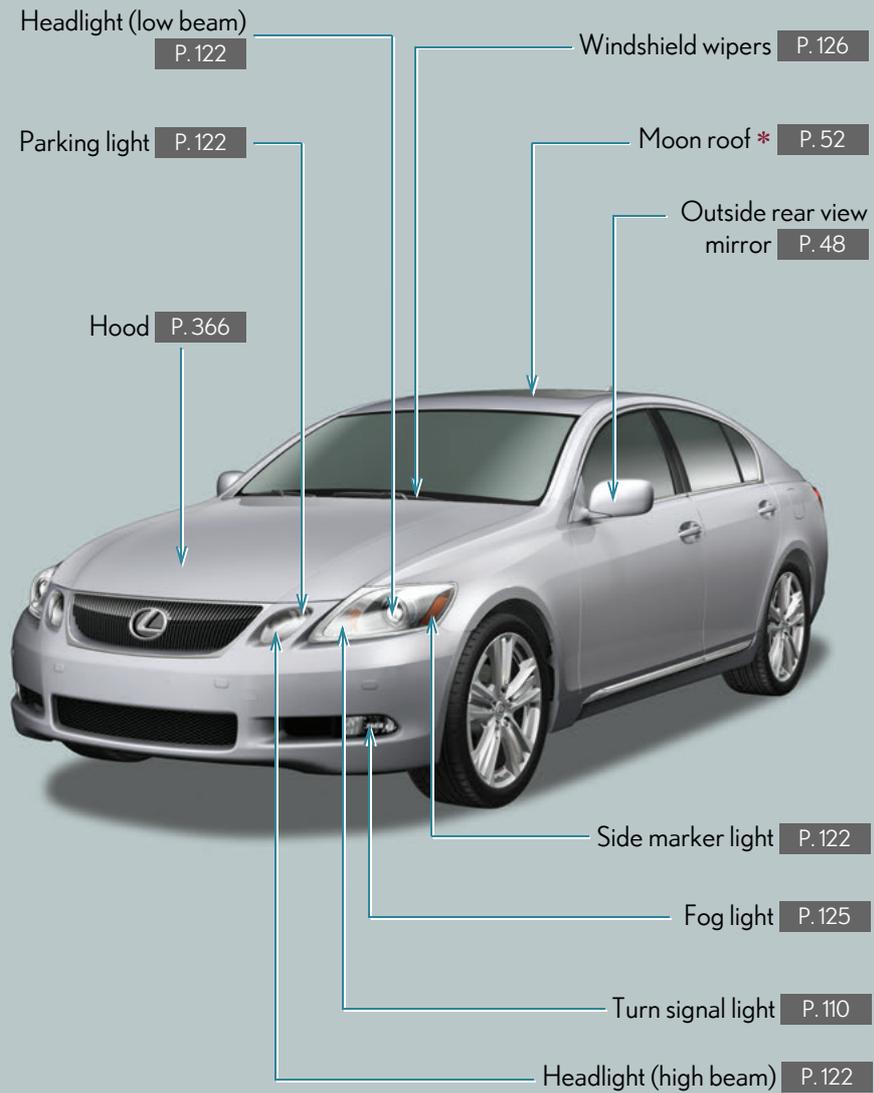
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners.....	516
---	-----

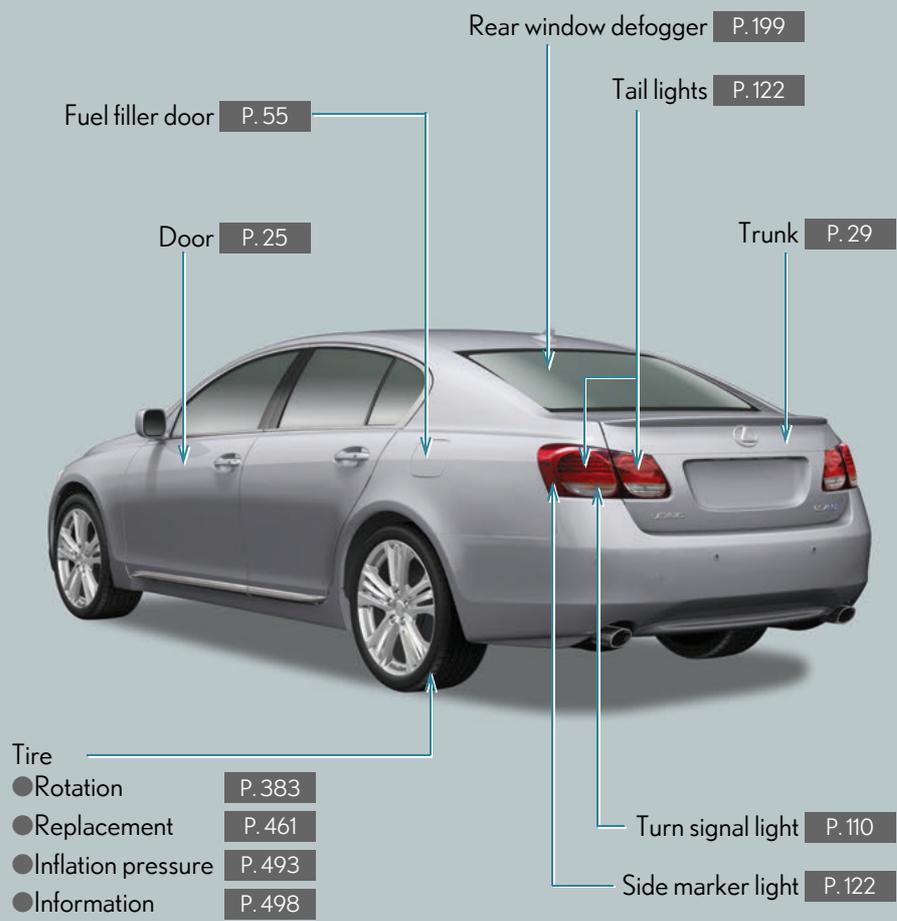
Index

Alphabetical index.....	518
What to do if.....	526

Pictorial index

Exterior

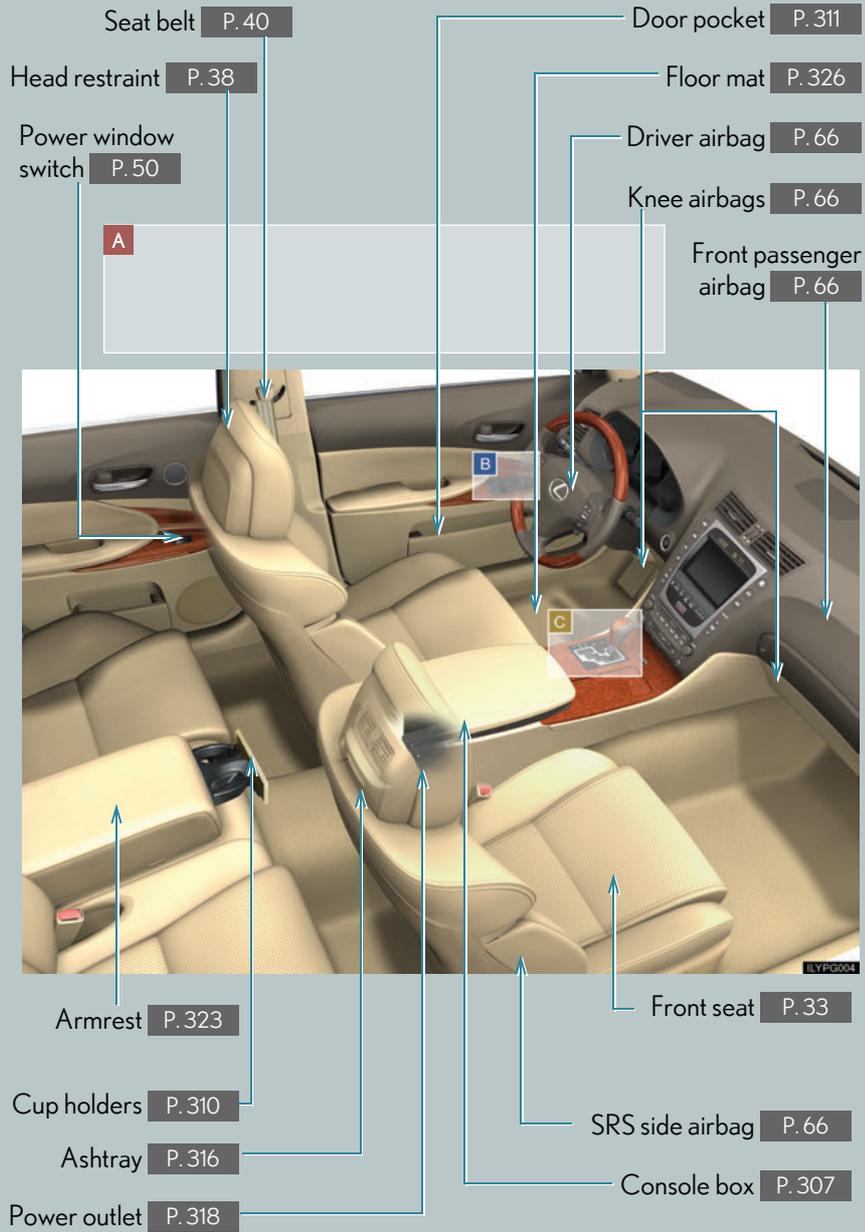




*: If equipped

Pictorial index

Interior



A

- Inside rear view mirror P. 47
- Lexus Link System switches* P. 338
- Personal light P. 303
- Moon roof switch* P. 52

- Personal light P. 303
- Interior light P. 303



SRS curtain shield airbag P. 66

- Interior light P. 303
- Vanity mirror P. 313
- Sun visor P. 312
- Garage door opener switches* P. 329
- Compass* P. 334

*: If equipped

B



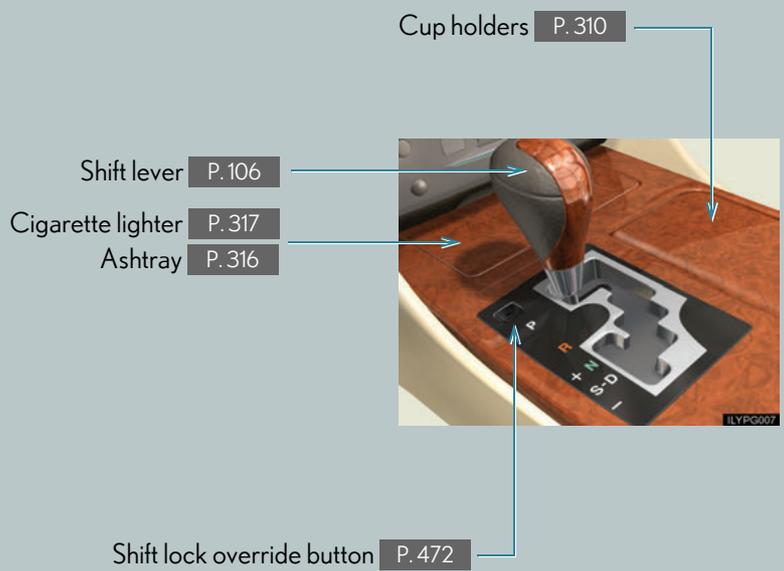
Driving position memory switches* P. 35

Door lock switch P. 25

Window lock switch P. 50

Power window switches P. 50

C



*: If equipped

Pictorial index

Instrument panel

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 126

Multi-information display P. 119

Gauges and meters P. 112

Headlight switch P. 122

Turn signal lever P. 110

Fog light switch P. 125

Seat heater switches* P. 319

Seat heater/ventilator switches* P. 321

Power switch P. 103



Parking brake pedal P. 111

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 46

Coin holder P. 309

"AVS" switch P. 163

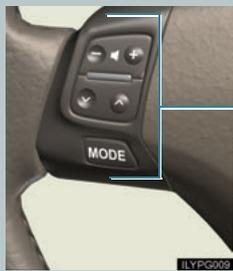
Mode select switch P. 107

"TRAC OFF" switch P. 166

Trunk opener main switch P. 29

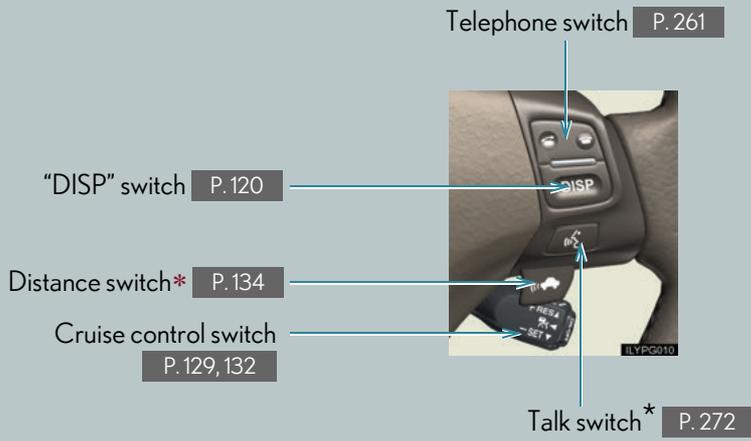
Glove box P. 307

A



Audio remote control switches P. 259

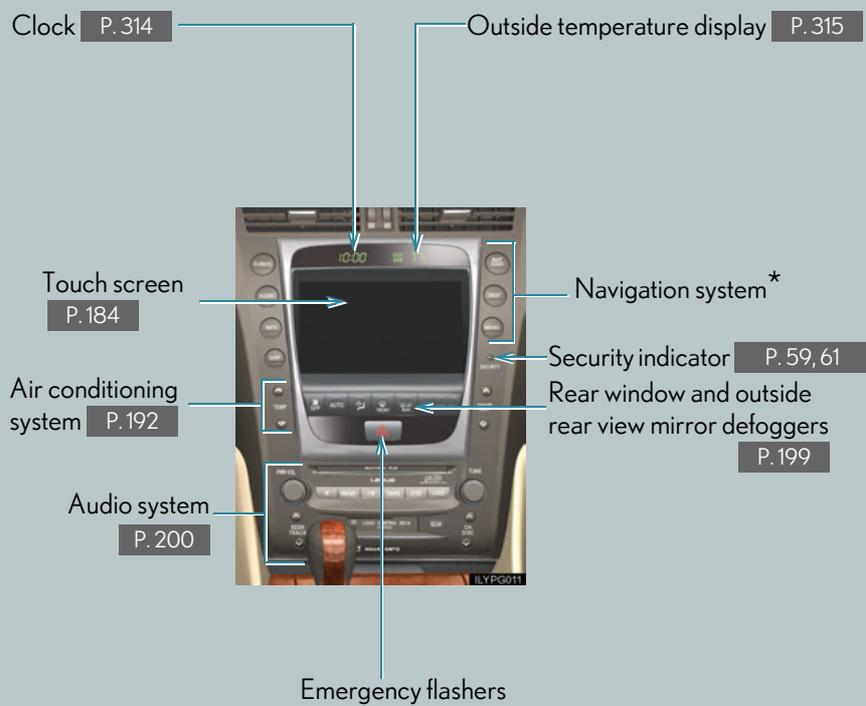
B



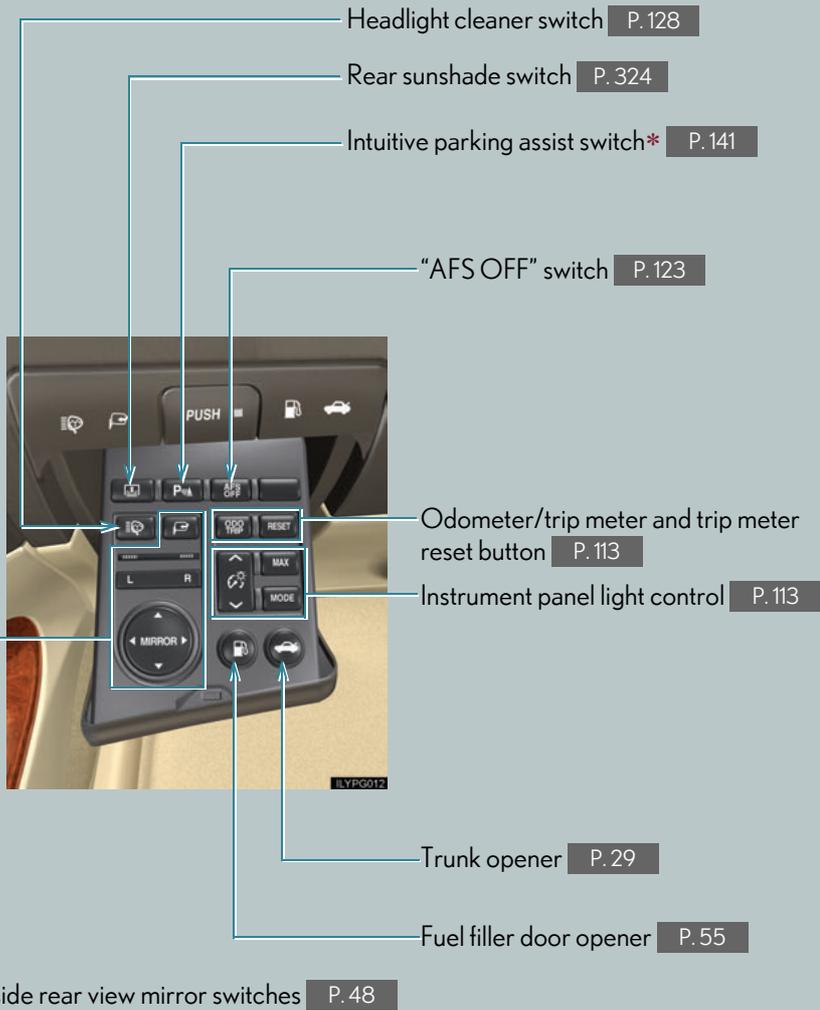
*: If equipped

*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

C



D



*: If equipped
*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the hybrid system, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, vehicle dynamics integrated management, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as the conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances despite of their electromagnetic shielding.

Unwanted noise may occur in the reception of the mobile two-way radio.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

 CAUTION

■ **General precautions while driving**

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that will hurt or kill you, your occupants or others.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

When left unattended, children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

■ **Dispose of the hybrid battery (traction battery)**

If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event of that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of your Lexus dealer or a qualified service shop. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, they may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

NOTICE

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Safety symbol



Throughout this manual, you will also see the symbol of a circle with a slash through it. This means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.

Before driving

1

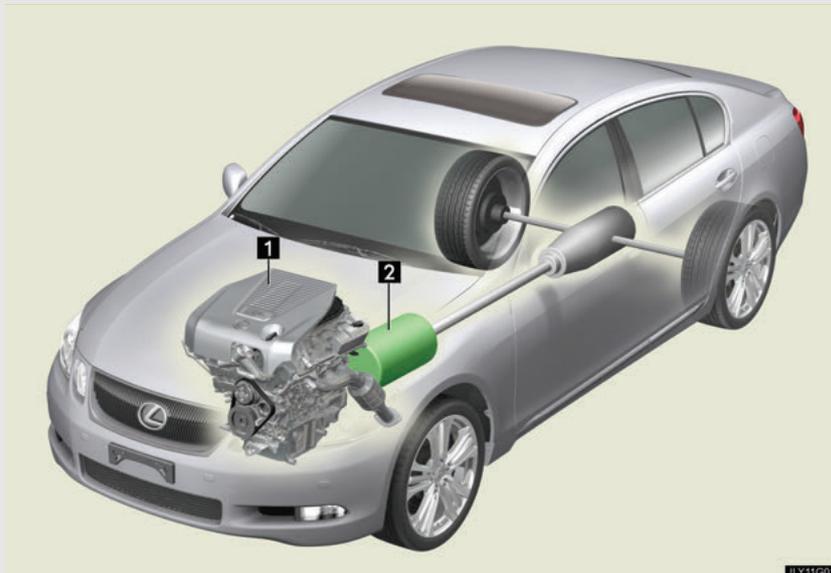
1-1. Hybrid system	2	1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof	50
Hybrid system.....	2	Power windows	50
1-2. Key information	11	Moon roof	52
Keys.....	11	1-6. Refueling	55
1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk	13	Opening the fuel tank cap	55
Smart access system with push-button start	13	1-7. Theft deterrent system	59
Wireless remote control.....	22	Hybrid vehicle immobilizer system	59
Doors.....	25	Alarm	61
Trunk	29	Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.).....	63
1-4. Adjustable components	33	1-8. Safety information	64
Front seats	33	Correct driving posture	64
Driving position memory system	35	SRS airbags	66
Head restraints.....	38	Front passenger occupant classification system.....	77
Seat belts	40	Child restraint systems	82
Steering wheel.....	46	Installing child restraints.....	85
Inside rear view mirror	47		
Outside rear view mirrors	48		

1-1. Hybrid system

Hybrid system

Your vehicle is a hybrid vehicle. It has characteristics different from conventional vehicles. Be sure you are closely familiar with the characteristics of your vehicle, and operate with care.

The hybrid system combines a gasoline engine and an electric motor (traction motor) according to driving conditions, improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.



- 1 Gasoline engine
- 2 Electric motor (Traction motor)

■ When stopped/during take-off

The gasoline engine stops when the vehicle is stopped. During take-off, the electric motor (traction motor) drives the vehicle. At slow speeds or when traveling down a gentle slope, the engine is stopped and the motor is used.

■ During normal driving

The gasoline engine is predominantly used. The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery as necessary.

■ When accelerating sharply

The power of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is added via electric motor (traction motor) to that of the gasoline engine.

■ When braking (Regenerative brake)

The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery).

1

Before driving

■ Regenerative braking

The motor generator converts kinetic energy to electric energy when:

- The accelerator pedal is released.
- The brake pedal is depressed with the shift lever in "D" or "S".

■ Conditions in which the gasoline engine may not stop

The gasoline engine starts and stops automatically. However, it may not stop automatically in the following conditions:

- During gasoline engine warm-up
- During hybrid battery (traction battery) charging
- During low or high hybrid battery (traction battery) temperature

1-1. Hybrid system

■ Charging the battery

- As the gasoline engine charges the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery does not need to be charged from an outside source. However, if the vehicle is left parked for a long time the hybrid battery will slowly discharge. For this reason, be sure to drive the vehicle at least once every few months for at least 30 minutes or 10 miles (16 km). If the hybrid battery becomes fully discharged and you are unable to jump-start the vehicle with the 12 volt battery, contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the shift lever is in "N", the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged. When driving in heavy traffic, operate the vehicle with the shift lever in "D" or "S" to avoid discharging the battery.

■ After the 12 volt battery has discharged or has been changed or removed

The gasoline engine may not stop even if the vehicle is running on the hybrid battery (traction battery). If this continues for a few days, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

There may be no engine sounds or vibration even though the vehicle is able to move. Always put the shift lever in "P" when parked.

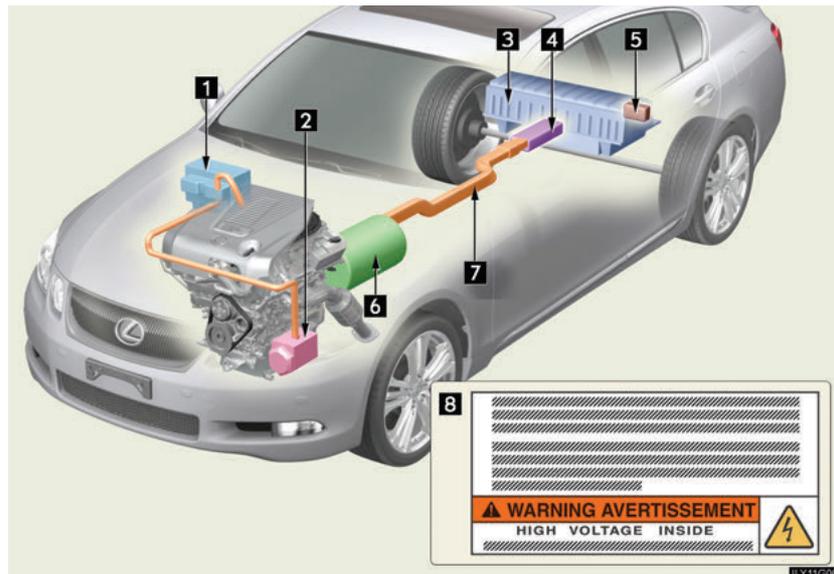
The following sounds or vibrations may occur when the hybrid system is operating, and are not a malfunction.

- Motor sounds may be heard from the engine compartment.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid battery (traction battery) behind the rear seat when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Sounds from the hybrid system may be heard when the trunk lid is open.
- Sounds may be heard from the transmission when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Engine sounds may be heard when accelerating sharply.
- Sounds may be heard from the regenerative brake when you press the brake pedal.
- Vibration may be felt when the gasoline engine starts or stops.
- You may hear cooling fan sounds coming from the air intake vents behind the rear seat.

■ Maintenance, repair, recycling, and disposal

Contact your Lexus dealer regarding maintenance, repair, recycling and disposal. Do not dispose of the vehicle yourself.

High voltage components



- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Inverter unit | 5 Service plug |
| 2 Air conditioning compressor | 6 Electric motor (Traction motor) |
| 3 Hybrid battery (Traction battery) | 7 High voltage cables (orange color) |
| 4 DC/DC converter | 8 Caution label |

Take care when handling the hybrid system, as it contains a high voltage system (about 650V at maximum) as well as parts that become extremely hot when the hybrid system is operating. Obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.

1

Before driving

1-1. Hybrid system

■ Hybrid battery air vent



1 Hybrid battery air vent

There is an air intake vent on the package tray for the purpose of cooling the hybrid battery (traction battery). If the vent becomes blocked, the hybrid battery may overheat, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery output.

Emergency shut off system

The emergency shut off system blocks off the high voltage current and stops the fuel pump to minimize the risk of electrocution and fuel leakage when a certain level of impact is detected by the impact sensor. If the emergency shut off system activates, your vehicle will not restart. To restart the hybrid system, contact your Lexus dealer.

Energy monitor/consumption screen

You can view the status of your hybrid system on the multi-information display (→P. 119) and the touch screen (→P. 184). The following images are examples only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ Energy monitor

- How to display on the touch screen:

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

If the "Consumption" screen is displayed, touch .

- How to display on the multi-information display:

STEP 1 Push the  button several times to select the energy monitor display.

1-1. Hybrid system

	Touch screen	Multi-information display
When the vehicle is powered by the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by both the gasoline engine and the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by the gasoline engine		
When the vehicle is charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)		
When there is no energy flow		
Hybrid battery (traction battery) status	Low ↔ Full	Low ↔ Full

1

Before driving

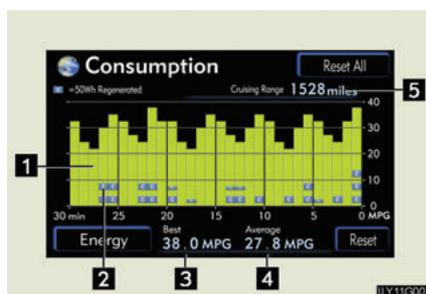
1-1. Hybrid system

■ Consumption

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

If the "Energy Monitor" screen is displayed, touch .



1 Fuel consumption in the past 30 minutes

2 Regenerated energy in the past 30 minutes

One symbol indicates 50 Wh. Up to 4 symbols are shown.

3 Best past fuel consumption

4 Average fuel consumption

5 Cruising range

■ Resetting the consumption data

Touching  will reset the "Average fuel consumption". Touching  will reset all the data (except the "Cruising Range") on the "Consumption" screen.

Hybrid warning message

A message is automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in the hybrid system or an improper operation is attempted.



If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display and the touch screen, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P. 444)

■ **If a warning light comes on or a warning message is displayed, or the 12 volt battery is disconnected**

The hybrid system may not start. In that case, try to start the system again. If the "READY" light does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

1

 **CAUTION**

■ **High voltage precautions**

The vehicle has high voltage DC and AC systems as well as a 12 volt system. DC and AC high voltage is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shock that may result in death or serious injury.

- Never touch, disassemble, remove or replace the high voltage parts, cables and their connectors.
- The hybrid system will become hot after starting as the system uses high voltage. Be careful of both the high voltage and the high temperature, and always obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.
- Never try to open the service plug access hole located in the luggage compartment. The service plug is used only when the vehicle is serviced and is subject to high voltage.

■ **Nickel-metal hydride battery**

Your vehicle contains a sealed nickel-metal hydride battery. If disposed of improperly, it is hazardous to the environment and there is a risk of severe burns and electrical shock that may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Emergency shut off system**

- Carefully check to see if there are exposed high voltage parts or cables. Never touch the parts or cables. (→P. 5)
- Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

Before driving

1-1. Hybrid system

CAUTION

■ Road accident cautions

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury.

- Pull your vehicle off the road, put the shift lever in "P", apply the parking brake, turn the hybrid system off.
- Do not touch the high voltage parts, cables and connectors.
- If electric wires are exposed inside or outside your vehicle, an electric shock may occur. Never touch exposed electric wires.
- If a fluid leak occurs, do not touch it as it may be strong alkaline electrolyte from the hybrid battery (traction battery). If it comes into contact with your skin or eyes, wash it off immediately with a large amount of water or if possible, boric acid solution. Seek immediate medical attention.
- If a fire occurs in the hybrid vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Never use a fire extinguisher that is not meant for electric fires. Using even a small amount of water may be dangerous.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, do so with the rear wheels raised. If the wheels with the electric motor (traction motor) are on the ground when towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity. This may cause an electricity leakage leading to a fire. (→P. 428)

NOTICE

■ Hybrid battery air vent

- Do not put foreign objects over the air vent. The hybrid battery (traction battery) may overheat and be damaged.
- Clean the air vent regularly to prevent the hybrid battery (traction battery) from overheating.
- Do not wet the air vent. It may cause a short circuit and damage the hybrid battery (traction battery).
- Do not load a large amount of water such as an aquarium into the vehicle. If water spills over the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery may be damaged.

1-2. Key information

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys

- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 13)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 22)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

1

Before driving

Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

You can use the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors, and to unlock the trunk.

■ When required to leave a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch OFF and lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 30, 307)

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 473)

1-2. Key information

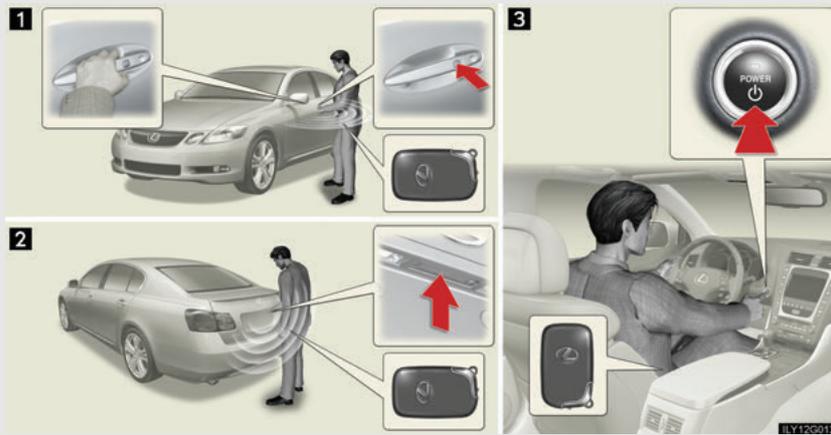
NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not disassemble the electronic key.
- Do not bend the keys, expose them to high temperatures by placing them in direct sunlight, or get them wet.
- Do not expose the keys to electromagnetic materials or attach any material that blocks electromagnetic waves to the key surface.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key, for example in your pocket.



- 1 Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 14)
- 2 Unlocks the trunk (→P. 14)
- 3 Starts and stops the hybrid system (→P. 103)

1

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Locking and unlocking the doors



Press the lock button to lock the door.



Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

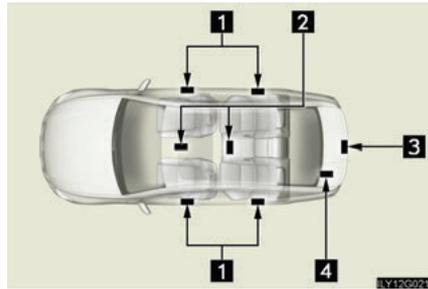
Unlocking the trunk



Press the button to unlock the trunk.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Antenna location



- 1 Antennas outside cabin
- 2 Antennas inside cabin
- 3 Antenna outside trunk
- 4 Antenna inside trunk

1

Before driving

■ Operation signals

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control function may not operate normally in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, radio station, electric power plant, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone or other wireless communication device
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When the electronic key has come into contact with, or is covered by a metallic object
- When a wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When the electronic key has been left near an electrical appliance such as a personal computer

In these situations, remove all possible cause of malfunction, or follow the steps outlined in "When the electronic key battery is discharged". (→P. 474)

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

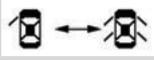
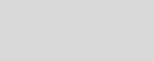
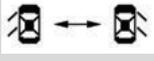
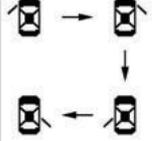
■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks.

STEP 1 Turn the power switch “OFF”.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the key surface is turned off, push and hold , , or  for approximately 5 seconds while pushing the  button on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (Wait for at least 5 seconds after each operation to continue an operation.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking doors	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold a passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors	
	Hold the door handle to unlock the front and rear doors on your side	Exterior: Beeps 4 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold the door handle to unlock the door	Exterior: Beeps once Interior: Rings once
	Hold a door handle to unlock all doors	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

STEP 3 Unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 61)

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Battery-saving function

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle and electronic key batteries from discharging.

- When the entry function has not been used for 2 weeks or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when...

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function (→P. 22) or the mechanical key (→P. 474)

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used.) If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control function does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→ P. 401)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances.
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
 - Table lamps

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

1

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Note for the smart access system with push-button start

- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the theft deterrent system automatically locks the vehicle again.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning indications on the multi-information display. (→P. 449)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds	Tried to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key is still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	Tried to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the power switch "OFF"	Turn the power switch "OFF" and lock the doors again.
	Closed the trunk while the electronic key is still inside and all doors are locked	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds	Tried to lock the vehicle using the entry function while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm sounds continuously	Tried to open the door and exit the vehicle without shifting the shift lever to "P"	Shift the shift lever to "P".

1

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm rings continuously	Switched to "ACC" mode while the driver's door is open (Opened the driver's door when the power switch is in "ACC" mode.)	Turn the power switch "OFF" and close the driver's door.
	Turned the power switch "OFF" while the driver's door is open	Close the driver's door.

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 474)
- Starting the hybrid system: →P. 475
- Replacing the battery: →P. 401

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start, theft deterrent system) can be changed. (→P. 510)

■ Certification for the smart access system with push-button start

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMLF-1

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

1

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system with push-button start antennas.
The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle and the trunk from outside the vehicle.



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors
- 3 Opens the windows and moon roof (push and hold)
- 4 Unlocks the trunk (push and hold)
- 5 Sounds alarm (push and hold) (→P. 62)

■ 2-step unlocking function

When you push the **1** button, the driver's door is unlocked. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

■ Operation indicator

- Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds when the windows and moon roof begin to open.

■ Door lock buzzer

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Security feature

→P. 18

■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 20

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 15

■ Low battery

If the wireless remote control does not function or if it only operates very close to the vehicle, the battery may be low. (→P. 401)

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. 2-step unlocking function, trunk unlocking function) can be changed. (→P. 510)

■ Certification for wireless remote control (for vehicles sold in the U.S.A.)

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Certification for wireless remote control (for vehicles sold in Canada)

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

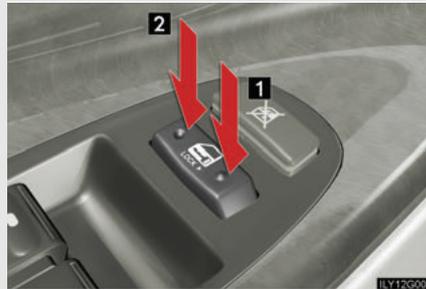
■ Smart access system with push-button start

→P. 14

■ Wireless remote control

→P. 22

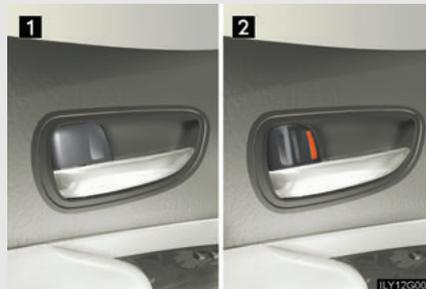
■ Door lock switch



1 Locks all doors

2 Unlocks all doors

■ Inside lock button



1 Locks the door

2 Unlocks the door

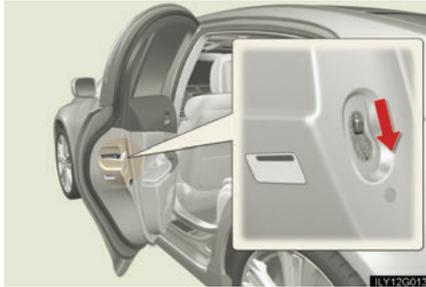
The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handles even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

1

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down rear door switches to lock the rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

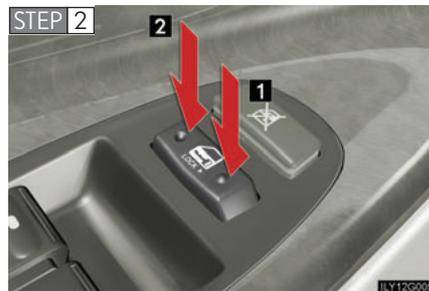
Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of "P" locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the power switch "OFF".

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

STEP 1 Close all the doors and switch the power switch to "IG-ON" mode. (Perform step 2 within 10 seconds.)



Shift the shift lever to "P" or "N", press and hold the driver's door lock switch (**1** or **2**) for 5 seconds then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set or canceled are shown as follows.

1
Before driving

Function	Shift lever position	Switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	"P"	1
Shift position linked door unlocking function		2
Speed linked door locking function	"N"	1
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		2

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Closing the front doors from outside with the inside lock button set in the locked position

The door cannot be locked if the power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode, or the electronic key is left in the vehicle. (However, depending on the key's location, the system may not be able to detect it. In these instances the door lock protection function will not operate properly.)

■ Locking the front doors from outside using the inside lock button

Push the inside lock button to the lock position and close the door.

■ Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 474)

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (→P. 510)

CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the front door while driving.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, smart access system with push-button start or wireless remote control.

■ Wireless remote control

→P. 22

■ Trunk opener



1 Open the trunk lid.

■ Smart access system with push-button start

→P. 14

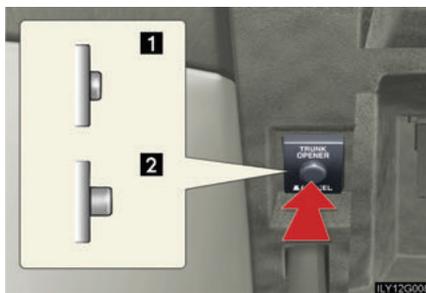
1

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Luggage security system

The trunk opener feature using the trunk opener switch, wireless remote control and smart access system with push-button start can be disabled by turning off a switch inside the glove box. This function allows you to keep valuables safety locked in the trunk when leaving a key with a parking attendant.



- 1 Enabled
- 2 Disabled

After turning off the trunk opener main switch, lock the glove box using the mechanical key. Take the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only. (→P. 11)

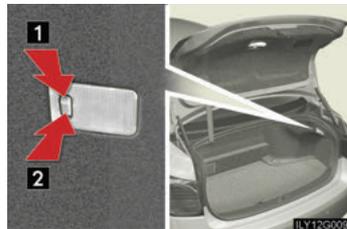
1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

■ Trunk lid closer

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open (not latched properly), the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

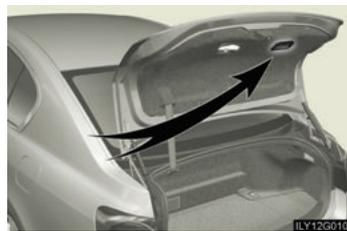
■ Trunk light

When the trunk light switch is set to ON, the trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.



- 1 ON
- 2 OFF

■ Trunk handle



Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.

■ Internal trunk release lever



The trunk lid can be opened by pulling down on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.

■ Using the mechanical key

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 474)

1

Before driving

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the trunk lid closed.

This not only keeps personal belongings from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle as they may lock themselves in the vehicle or trunk, which could cause the child to overheat or suffocate resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the trunk has not been fully closed

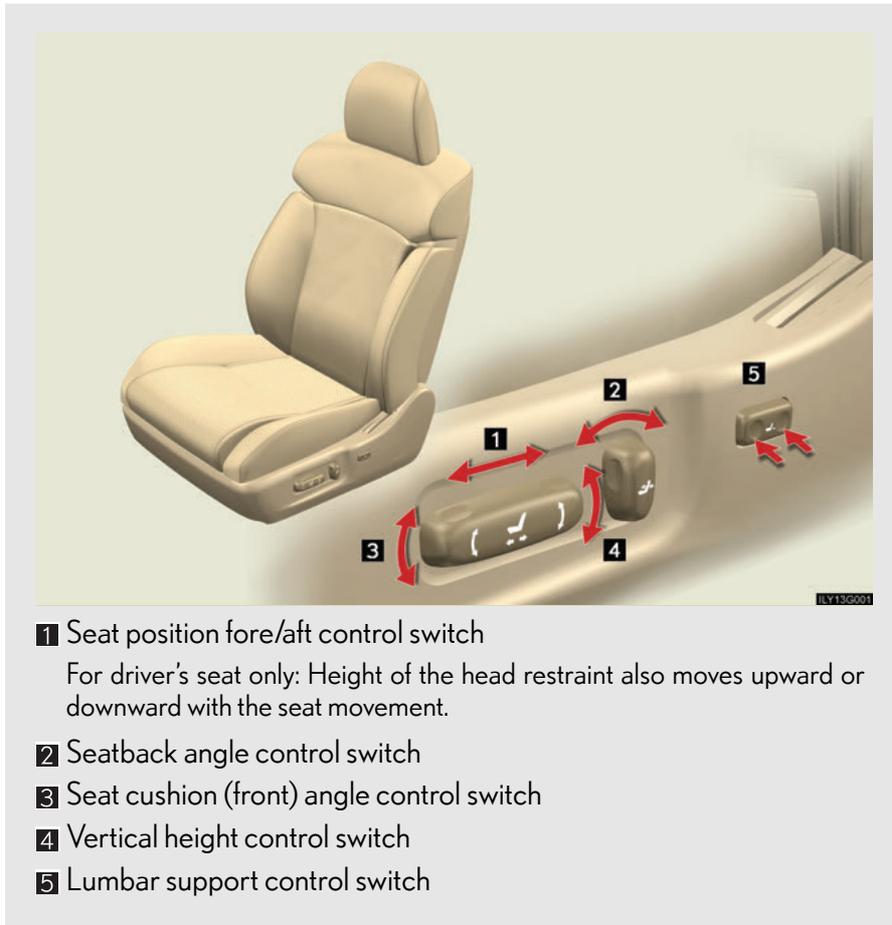
Be careful that your fingers do not get caught by the trunk lid when it is closing automatically.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damage to the trunk lid closer

Do not apply excessive force when the closer is operating.

1-4. Adjustable components Front seats



1

Before driving

1-4. Adjustable components

CAUTION

■ Reclining adjustment

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.

If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

■ When adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

Wait until a passenger is seated or have gotten off the front passenger's seat before operating the switch to avoid injuring the passenger.

1-4. Adjustable components

Driving position memory system (if equipped)

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be entered into the computer's memory and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.

Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

The same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the position of the front passenger's seat to be memorized.

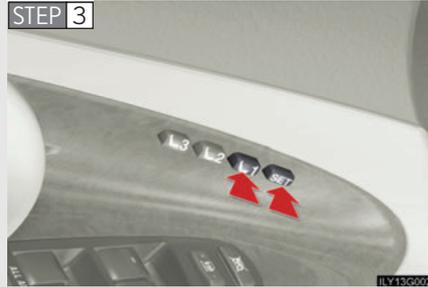
■ Entering a position to memory

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Switch to "IG-ON" mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3



While pushing the "SET" button, push button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

1

Before driving

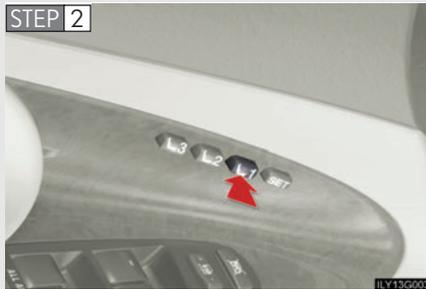
1-4. Adjustable components

■ Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 1 Switch to "IG-ON" mode.

STEP 2



Push button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the desired position.

■ Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver side only)

Memorized driving positions can be recalled when you unlock the driver's door using the entry function or wireless remote control and open the driver's door. Steering wheel position is recalled when the power switch is set to the "IG-ON" mode.

■ Setting the linked door unlock operation

STEP 1 Set the driving positions into the memory system using the "1", "2" or "3" buttons on the driver's side. (→P. 35)

STEP 2 Turn the power switch to the "OFF" mode, then close the driver's door.

STEP 3



Push the "1", "2" or "3" button on the driver's side and the **1** button on the wireless remote control at the same time for about 1 second until you hear a beep.

STEP 4 Open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.

In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 61)

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Close the driver's door with the power switch set to the "OFF" mode.

STEP 2 Push the "SET" button and the  button on the wireless remote control at the same time for about 1 second until you hear 2 beeps.

■ **Retained accessory power**

Each memorized position (except for the tilt and telescopic steering column) can be activated within 30 seconds after the corresponding side door is opened, even if the power switch is in the "OFF" mode.

■ **If any position memory button is pushed while the adjustments are being made**

The operation will stop. To reactivate the system, push the desired button ("1" or "2") again.

■ **If the 12 volt battery is disconnected**

The memorized positions must be reset because the computer's memory is erased when the battery is disconnected.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

If this happens, you can stop the movement by pressing another driving position memory button.

1

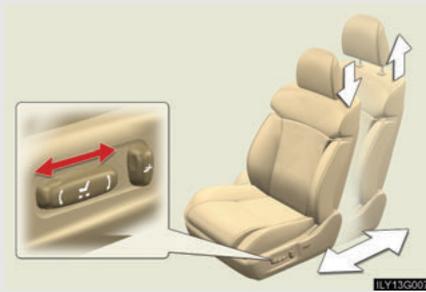
Before driving

1-4. Adjustable components

Head restraints

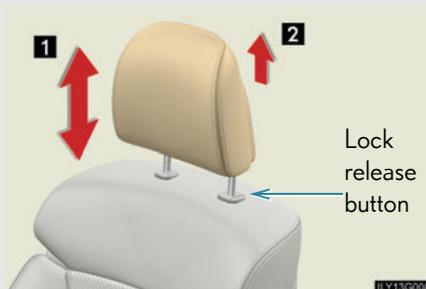
■ Vertical adjustment

▶ Driver's seat



Head restraint height can be adjusted automatically along with the seat position adjustment. (→P. 33)

▶ Front passenger's and rear seats



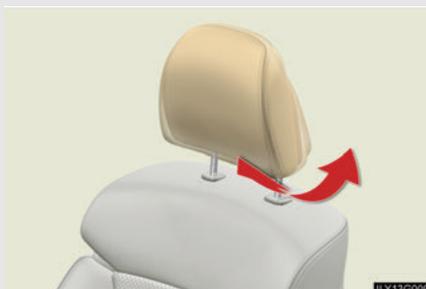
1 Grip head restraint and move it up or down.

Push and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.

2 Grip head restraint and remove while holding the lock release button.

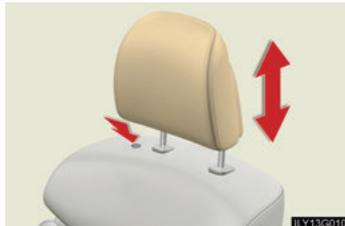
■ Horizontal adjustment

▶ Front and outboard rear seats



Grip head restraint and twist to tilt forward or backward.

■ **Adjusting the height of the driver's head restraint manually**

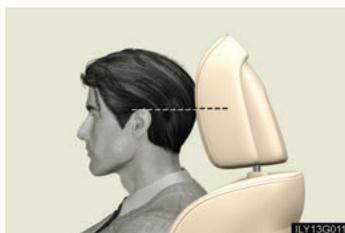


Push and hold the lock release button when lowering or raising the head restraint.

■ **Removing the driver's seat head restraint**

For removal and installation, ask your Lexus dealer.

■ **Adjusting the height of the head restraints**



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

■ **Adjusting the center rear seat head restraint**

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

■ **Head restraints of different seats**

The head restraints are specially designed for the seats on which they are installed.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Head restraint precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

1

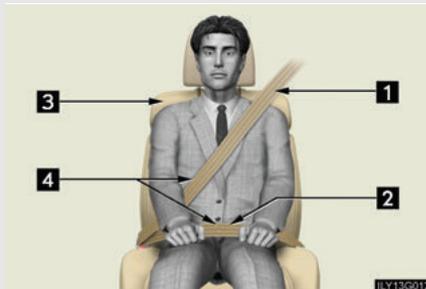
Before driving

1-4. Adjustable components

Seat belts

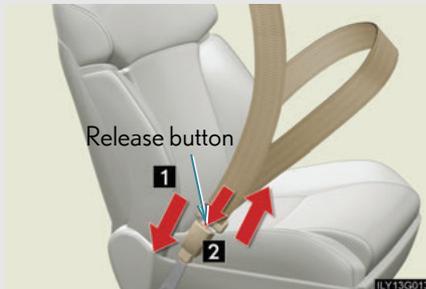
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

■ Correct use of the seat belts



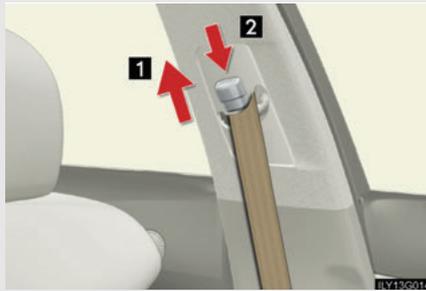
- 1 Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- 2 Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- 3 Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- 4 Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt



- 1 Fastening the belt
Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.
- 2 Releasing the belt
Press the release button.

■ Adjusting the height of the belt (front seats)



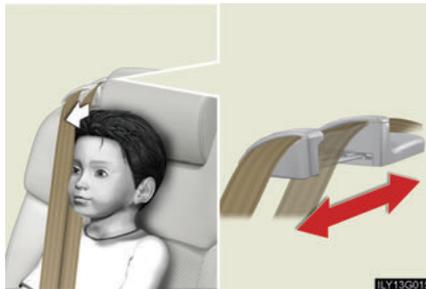
- 1 Up
- 2 Down

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

1

Before driving

■ Seat belt comfort guide (outboard rear seats)



If the shoulder belt fits close to a person's neck, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward.

■ Seat belt pretensioners (front and outboard rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

1-4. Adjustable components

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

When the pre-collision sensor detects an obstacle and determines that a collision is unavoidable, the seat belts lessen collision injury by retracting the slack in the front seat belts before the collision, thus restraining the driver and passenger at an earlier stage.

The seat belts will also operate in the event of sudden braking. (→P. 169)

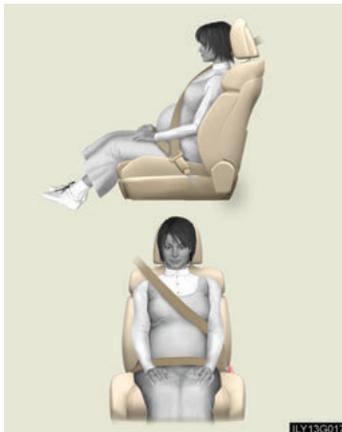
■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend, and you can move around fully.

■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 89)

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 40)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ **People suffering illness**

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 40)

■ **Child seat belt usage**

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriately for the child, until the child become large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 82)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 40 regarding seat belt usage.

■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

The seat belts cannot be used if a pretensioner has activated. After an accident, have your Lexus dealer inspect the pretensioners and replace them, if necessary.

■ **Seat belt extender**



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

1

Before driving

1-4. Adjustable components

CAUTION

■ Wearing a seat belt

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at the same time, including children.
- Children should be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of a seat belt. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may cause it to activate or operate improperly and may cause death or serious injury.

 CAUTION

■ **Using a seat belt extender**

- Do not wear the seat belt extender, if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system, because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or injury in the event of a collision.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

■ **Precaution for pre-collision seat belts**

Do not rely solely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

 NOTICE

■ **When using a seat belt extender**

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

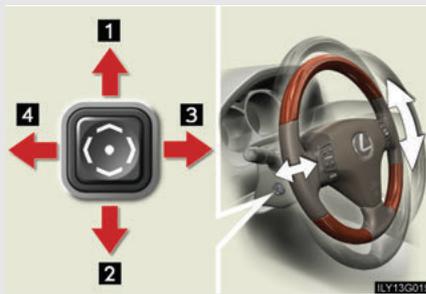
1

Before driving

1-4. Adjustable components

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Toward the driver
- 4 Away from the driver

Auto tilt away and auto return



When the power switch is turned "OFF", the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

1-4. Adjustable components Inside rear view mirror

In the "AUTO" mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduces the reflected light.



Turns "AUTO" mode on/off

The indicator comes on when "AUTO" mode is turned ON.

The mirror is automatically set to "AUTO" whenever the power switch is turned ON.

1

Before driving

■ To prevent sensor error



To ensure correct functioning of the sensors, do not touch or cover the sensors.

⚠ CAUTION

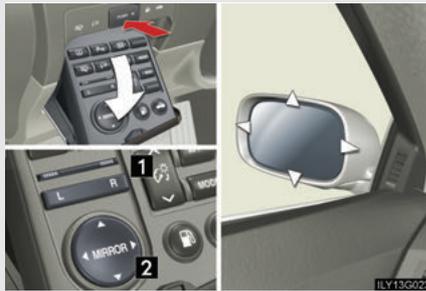
■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror. Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, or resulting in death or serious injury.

1-4. Adjustable components

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.



- 1 Select the mirror to adjust ("L": left or "R": right)
- 2 Adjust the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

Folding the mirrors



- 1 Press the switch
Pressing again will extend the mirrors.

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the mirror heaters to defog the mirrors. (→P. 199)

■ Auto anti-glare function

When the inside rear view mirror is set to "AUTO" mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 47)

■ Linked mirror function when reversing

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (neither "L" nor "R" selected).

■ One-touch adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and adjusted with the touch of a button. (→P. 35)

1

Before driving

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in losing control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Before driving, be sure to extend mirrors and make an adjustment properly.

■ When the mirror heaters are operating

Do not touch the mirror surface as the mirror surface becomes hot.
And do not touch the mirror surface also when the wiper switch is on at lower than 77°F (25°C) of the outside temperature.

NOTICE

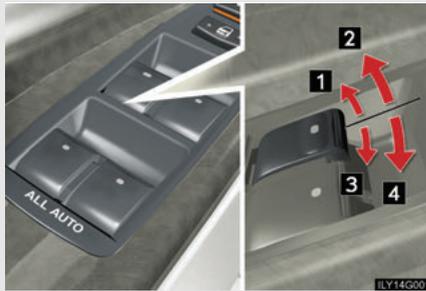
■ If ice should jam the mirror

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ Linked door lock window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 474)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 22)

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

■ Operating the power windows after turning the power switch "OFF"

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the power switch is switched to "ACC" mode or turned "OFF". They cannot, however, be operated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ When the 12 volt battery is disconnected

The power windows must be initialized in order to ensure proper operation. (Perform for each window with the switch for each seat.)

STEP 1 Open the window halfway.

STEP 2 Fully close the window by pulling the switch up and continue holding the switch for 1 second.

The indicator on the switch changes from a flashing pattern to being on when initializing are complete.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (→P. 512)

1

Before driving

CAUTION

■ When closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury.

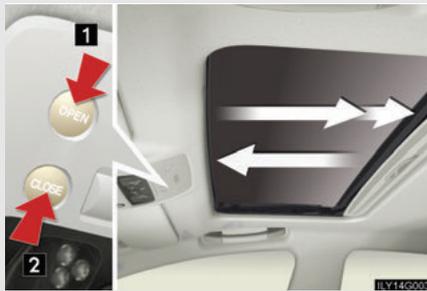
■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof Moon roof (if equipped)

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

■ Opening and closing



1 Open

Stops just before it is opened fully. Press the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

■ Tilt up and down



1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ Linked door lock moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 474)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 22)

■ Operating the moon roof after turning the power switch "OFF"

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the power switch is switched to "ACC" mode or turned "OFF". It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ If the moon roof cannot be closed automatically

Keep the switch depressed.

■ To reduce moon roof wind noise

Drive with the moon roof opened automatically (just before fully opened position).

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (→P. 512)

1

Before driving

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

CAUTION

■ When opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ When closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

1-6. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

■ Before refueling the vehicle

Turn the power switch “OFF” and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

■ Opening the fuel tank cap



1 Press the fuel filler door opener switch.



The screen to the left is displayed for a short period. Wait until “REFUEL READY” is displayed, then proceed to the next step.



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

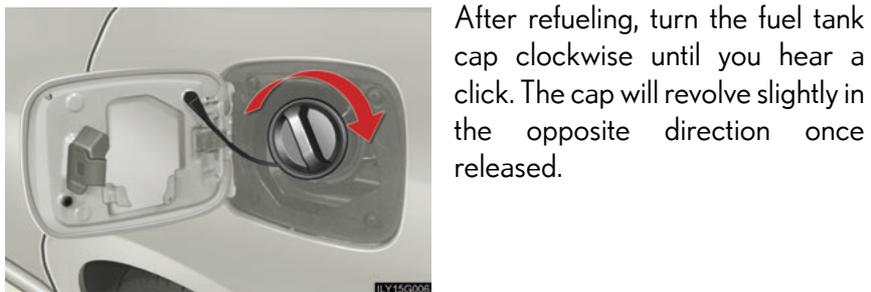
1

Before driving

1-6. Refueling



Closing the fuel tank cap



■ Fuel types

Use premium unleaded gasoline. (91 Octane Rating [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

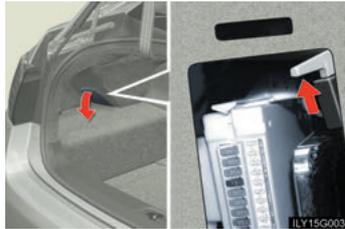
■ Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 17.2 gal. (65 L, 14.3 Imp. gal.)

■ Open fuel filler door warning

→P. 456

■ When the fuel filler door opener switch is inoperable



If the fuel filler door opener switch is inoperable, contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle. If you must refuel your vehicle, you can open the fuel filler door manually as shown. The system to lower internal pressure may not be functioning so you must turn the cap slowly as the pressure releases. In addition, fuel may spill out during refueling. Fill the fuel tank carefully and slowly.

1

Before driving

⚠ CAUTION

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity. Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

1-6. Refueling

CAUTION

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Refueling

- Finish refueling within 30 minutes. If more than 30 minutes passes, the internal valve closes. In this condition, fuel may overflow during the refueling process. Press the fuel filler door opener switch again.
- Do not spill fuel during refueling. Failing to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

1-7. Theft deterrent system Hybrid vehicle immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the hybrid system from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the power switch has been turned "OFF" to indicate that the system is operating.

1

Before driving

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type of hybrid vehicle immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object.
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

■ Certifications for the hybrid vehicle immobilizer system

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

1-7. Theft deterrent system

CAUTION

■ Certifications for the hybrid vehicle immobilizer system

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTICE

■ For proper system operation

Do not modify, remove or disable the hybrid vehicle immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

1-7. Theft deterrent system

Alarm

The alarm warns of forcible entry using the horn and lights.



To arm the alarm, exit the vehicle, make sure that the doors, trunk and hood are closed, and lock all the doors.

The system will operate automatically once the indicator changes from lit to flashing.

1

Before driving

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following:

- Unlock the doors or trunk using the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control.
- Start the hybrid system. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, check that there is no one in the vehicle, and that all windows and moon roof are closed before locking the vehicle.

1-7. Theft deterrent system

■ When the 12 volt battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.

If the 12 volt battery is discharged before canceling the alarm, the system may be triggered when the battery is reconnected.

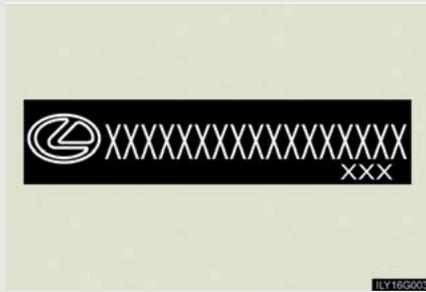
■ Panic mode



When  is pushed for longer than about one second, the headlights/tail lights/emergency flashers will flash, the front and rear interior lights will come on, and an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, push any button on the wireless remote control.

1-7. Theft deterrent system Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)



These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



- 1 Sit upright and well back in the seat.
- 2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 33)
- 3 Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
- 4 Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the air-bag is facing your chest. (→P. 46)
- 5 Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 39)
- 6 Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 40)

⚠ CAUTION**■ Caution while driving**

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

■ Adjusting the seat position

- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.
If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.
- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

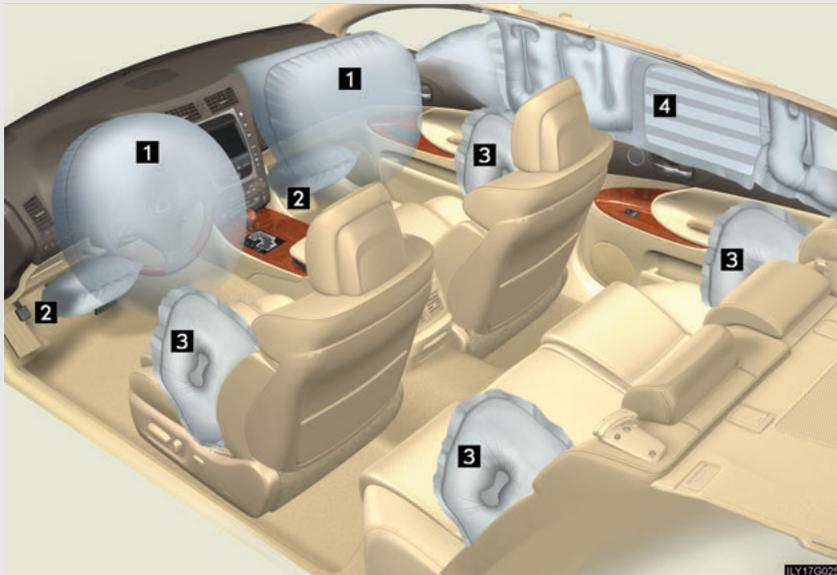
1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



► Front airbags

1 Driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

2 Knee airbag
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection.

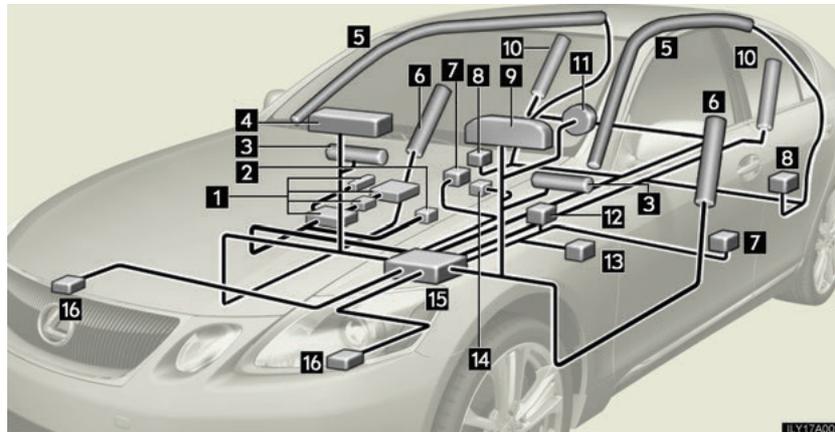
► Side and curtain shield airbags

3 Front side airbag/rear side airbag (rear side airbags are optional)
Can help protect the torso of the front occupants and rear out-board occupants.

- 4 Curtain shield airbag
Can help protect primarily the head of front occupants and rear out-board occupants.

1

Airbag system components



Before driving

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Occupant detection system (ECU and sensors) | 8 Curtain shield airbag sensor |
| 2 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch | 9 SRS warning light |
| 3 Knee airbag | 10 Rear side airbag (if equipped) |
| 4 Front passenger airbag | 11 Driver airbag |
| 5 Curtain shield airbag | 12 Driver's seat belt buckle switch |
| 6 Front side airbag | 13 Driver's seat position sensor |
| 7 Side and curtain shield airbag sensor | 14 "AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator lights |
| | 15 Airbag sensor assembly |
| | 16 Front airbag sensor |

1-8. Safety information

Your vehicle is equipped with “ADVANCED AIRBAGS” designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver's seat position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

■ Operating conditions (front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 15 mph (25 km/h) collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

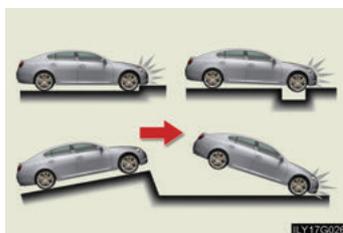
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front passenger airbags will not activate, if there is not passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy, if the heavy luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied.

■ Operating conditions (side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to a severe impact from the side.
- The SRS front side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if the heavy luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 77)

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

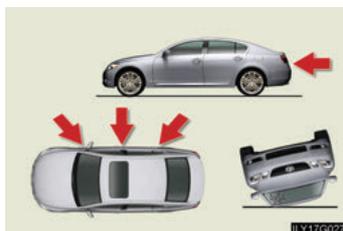


- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

1-8. Safety information

■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

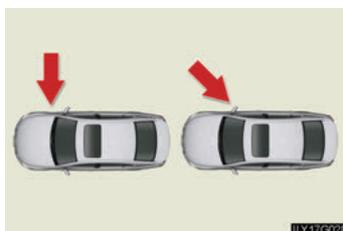
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

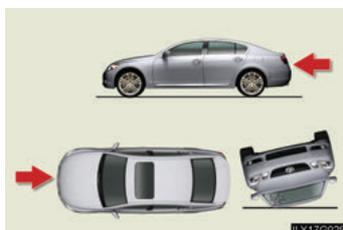
■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

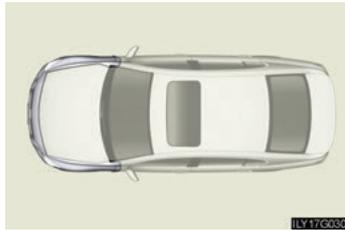


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

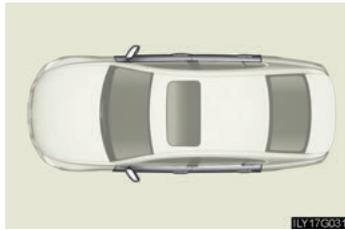
■ **When to contact your Lexus dealer**

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, front passenger airbag cover or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (“NHTSA”) advises:
 - Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
 - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
 - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
 - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

⚠ CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 82)

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.
- Do not allow a child to sit on the knees of a front passenger while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the front passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION**■ SRS airbag precautions**

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.
- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.
- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 67. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

CAUTION

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rail
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

1-8. Safety information

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



- 1 SRS warning light
- 2 "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light
- 3 "AIRBAG ON" indicator light
- 4 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

1

Before driving

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

■ Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	"AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIRBAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Activated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

1-8. Safety information

■ Child^{*3} or child restraint system^{*4}

Indicator/ warning light	"AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIRBAG OFF" ^{*5}
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing ^{*2}
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator lights	Not illumi- nated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Deactivated

■ System malfunction

Indicator/ warning light	"AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIRBAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

1

Before driving

- *1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.
- *2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- *3: When a large child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique and posture.
- *4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 82)
- *5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual as for installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 85)

 CAUTION

■ **Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIRBAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear seat.
- Do not let a rear seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the “AIRBAG ON” indicator light is illuminated. If the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the “AIRBAG OFF” indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 85)
- Do not remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seat-backs.

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 85)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

► Infant seat



▶ Convertible seat



▶ Booster seat



1

Before driving

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

Leave the child restraint system properly secured on the seat. Do not store the restraint loosely on a passenger seat or in the trunk.

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

Get an appropriate child restraint system for the child. If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 40)

 CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system should allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

1-8. Safety information

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the outboard rear seats using a seat belt or a child restraint lower anchor belt. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.



- 1** Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 42)



- 2** Child restraint lower anchorages

Lower anchorages are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



- 3** Anchor bracket (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all rear seats.

1

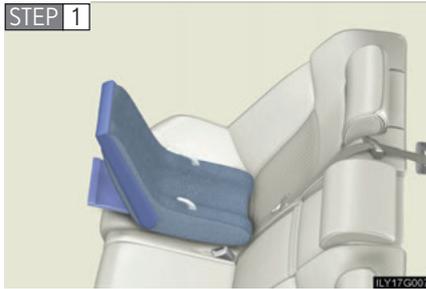
Before driving

1-8. Safety information

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

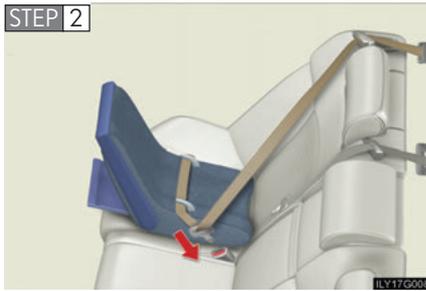
■ Rear facing child seat — Infant/convertible

STEP 1



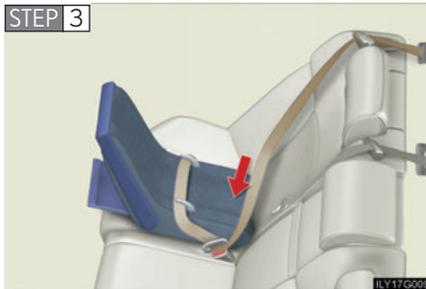
Place the child seat on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2



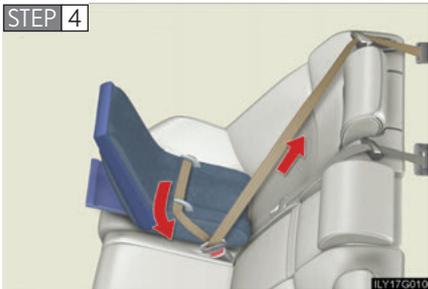
Run the seat belt through the infant seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.



While pushing the child seat down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Forward facing — Convertible child seat



Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Fully extend the shoulder strap and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information



While pushing the child seat into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

■ Booster seat



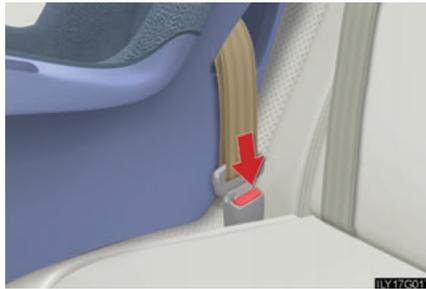
Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Sit the child in the child seat. Fit the seat belt to the child seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 40)

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



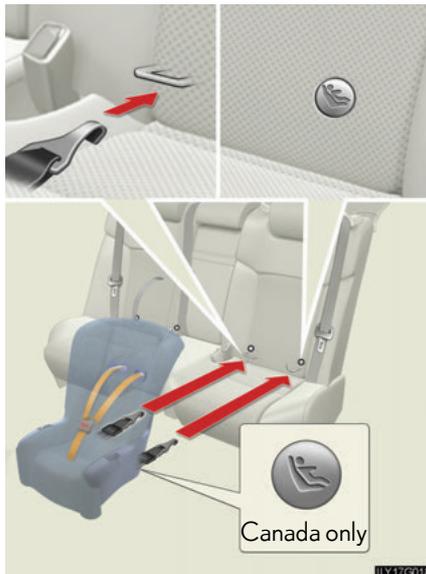
Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

1

Before driving

Installation with child restraint lower anchorages

► Type A



STEP 1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seat-back slightly.

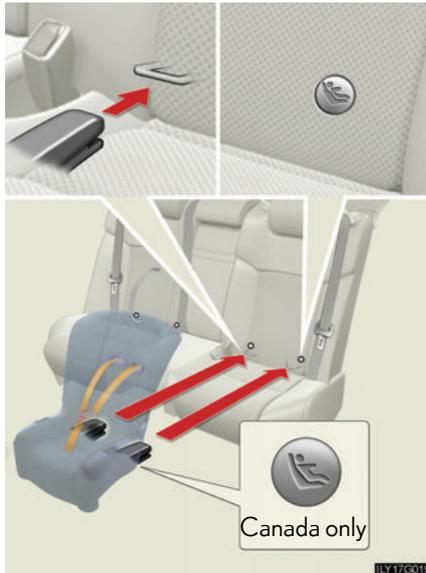
STEP 2 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the anchorages.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchorage.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower anchorage system.

1-8. Safety information

► Type B



STEP 1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seat-back slightly.

STEP 2 Latch the buckles onto the anchorages.

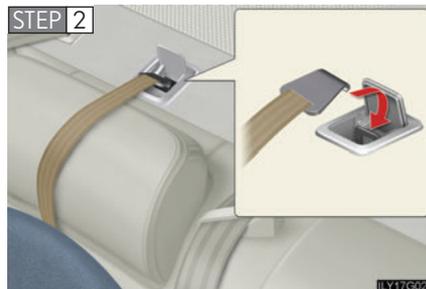
If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchorage.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower anchorage system.

Child restraint systems with a top strap



Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or lower anchors, and lock the head restraint in place at the lowest position.



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

1

Before driving

■ **Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages**

Anchorage conform to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When installing a booster seat**

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 42)

- ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.
- Do not allow the child to play with the seat belt or the child could be killed or seriously injured.

CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child may be injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Only put a forward facing or booster child seat on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward facing or booster child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIRBAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Ensure the belt and tab are securely locked and that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child seat in different directions to be sure it is secure.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

 CAUTION

■ **Do not use a seat belt extender**

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a collision.

■ **To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchorages**

When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child seat. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

1

Before driving

1-8. Safety information

2-1. Driving procedures	96	2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers	122
Driving the vehicle.....	96	Headlight switch.....	122
Starting the hybrid system.....	103	Fog light switch	125
Transmission	106	Windshield wipers and washer	126
Turn signal lever	110	Headlight cleaner switch.....	128
Parking brake.....	111		
2-2. Instrument cluster	112	2-4. Using other driving systems	129
Gauges and meters	112	Cruise control	129
Indicators and warning lights.....	116	Dynamic radar cruise control	132
Multi-information display.....	119	Intuitive parking assist	141
		Rear view monitor system	160
		AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System).....	163
		Driving assist systems.....	164
		PCS (Pre-Collision System).....	169
		2-5. Driving information	172
		Cargo and luggage.....	172
		Vehicle load limits	175
		Winter driving tips	176
		Trailer towing.....	181
		Dinghy towing	182

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting the hybrid system (→P. 103)

■ Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to “D”.
(→P. 106)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake.
(→P. 111)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in “D”, push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to “P”.
(→P. 106)

■ Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in “D”, push the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake.
(→P. 111)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to “P”.
(→P. 106)

STEP 4 Stop the hybrid system.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

Starting on a steep incline

STEP 1 Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “D”.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km):
Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in the low range in the "S" position.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 488)

■ For efficient use

- Put the shift lever into "D" when driving
In the "N" position, the gasoline engine operates but electricity cannot be generated. The hybrid battery (traction battery) will be discharged requiring unnecessary engine power to recharge.
- Drive your vehicle smoothly
Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will make more effective use of the traction motor without having to use gasoline engine power.
- Avoid repeated acceleration
Repeated acceleration consumes hybrid battery (traction battery) power, resulting in poor acceleration. Battery power can be restored by driving with the accelerator pedal slightly released.
- Put the shift lever into "P" when parking
In the "N" position, the hybrid battery (traction battery) does not recharge. Leaving the shift lever in the "N" position for an extended period of the time may discharge the hybrid battery. The vehicle cannot run if the hybrid battery is discharged.

■ When starting on an incline

The hill-start assist control may operate. (→P. 164)

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the hybrid system running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal. Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
- The driver should pay attention to pedestrians when the vehicle is powered only by the electric motor (traction motor). Because there is no engine sounds, the pedestrians may misjudge the vehicle's movement.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R". Doing so may cause the hybrid system not to operate or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and eventually, death. Have the cause of the problem inspected immediately.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When driving the vehicle**

- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to “P”, “R” or “N” while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so can cause significant damage to the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to “N” while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so may cause the engine brake not to operate properly and lead to an accident.
- Do not turn the hybrid system off while driving.
The brake actuator will not operate properly if the hybrid system is off.
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.108)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces, as the vehicle may spin or skid when downshifting, rapidly accelerating, braking or turning.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.

2-1. Driving procedures

CAUTION

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the hybrid system.
If the vehicle is in any positions other than "P" or "N" the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the hybrid system on for a long time.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the hybrid system is operating to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle moving.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
Failure to do so may result in the following:
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the hybrid system and lock the vehicle.
Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the hybrid system is operating.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the hybrid system is operating or immediately after turning the hybrid system off.
Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the hybrid system operating in an area with snow build up, or where snow is expected to fall.
Exhaust gases may enter the vehicle and cause gas poisoning.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the hybrid system off.

Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or press the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to abnormal hybrid system overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle and cause gas poisoning.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.

Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

- If the brake actuator does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhill or sharp turns that require making.

In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.

- Do not pump the brake pedal if the hybrid system is not operating. Each push on the pedal uses up your reserved brake fluid pressure.

- The brake system consists of 3 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer.

Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

2-1. Driving procedures

NOTICE

■ While driving the vehicle

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Front brake only: Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or that of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

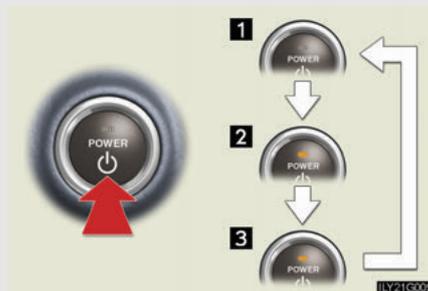
Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 464)

2-1. Driving procedures

Starting the hybrid system

Modes can be switched by pressing the power switch when carrying the electronic key on your person. (The hybrid system can be started in any mode by operating the switch at the same time as depressing the brake pedal.)

■ Changing power switch mode



1 "OFF" mode*

Emergency flashers can be used.

2 "ACC" mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

3 "IG-ON" mode

All electrical components can be used.

*: The power cannot be switched to "OFF" unless the shift lever is in "P".

■ Starting the hybrid system

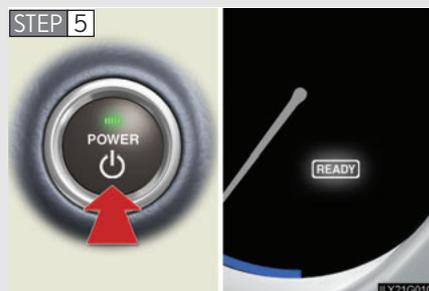
STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.

STEP 3 Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 4 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

The power switch indicator turns green.



Press the power switch.

After a few seconds, the "READY" light will flash and come on with a beep sound.

The vehicle can move when the "READY" light is on, even if the engine is stopped.

2

When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

■ If the hybrid system does not start

The hybrid vehicle immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 59)

■ When the power switch indicator flashes in amber

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ If the "READY" light does not come on

If the "READY" light does not come on when you press the power switch with the shift lever in "P" and the brake pedal pressed, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Auto power OFF function

If the vehicle is left in the "ACC" mode for more than an hour with the shift lever in "P", the power switch will automatically turn "OFF".

■ When the ambient temperature is low

Such as during winter driving conditions, it may take time until the "READY" light comes on.

■ Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

→P. 4

■ When the hybrid system is malfunctioning

→P. 450

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 17

■ When the electronic key battery is discharged

→P. 401

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 15

■ Leak detection pump

Several hours after the hybrid system is turned off, you may hear a sound coming from underneath the luggage compartment for several minutes. This is normal operation and does not indicate a malfunction.

 CAUTION

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

Always start the hybrid system while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the hybrid system under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not touch the power switch while driving. Pressing and holding the power switch will stop the hybrid system, which may lead to an accident.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the power switch in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode for long periods without the hybrid system on.

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

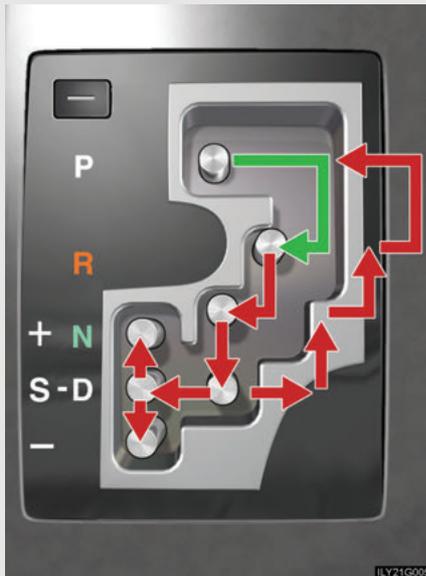
- Do not race the hybrid system.
- If the hybrid system becomes difficult to start, have the hybrid system checked immediately.

2-1. Driving procedures

Transmission

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

■ Shifting the shift lever



← While the power switch is in "IG-ON" mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

■ Shift position uses

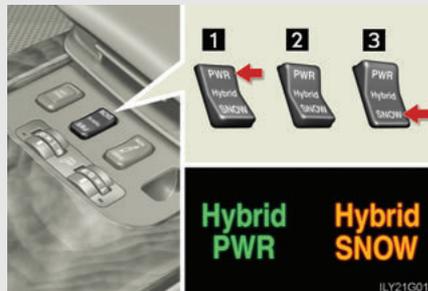
Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the hybrid system
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving* ¹
S	"S" mode driving* ² (→P.108)

*¹: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.

*²: By selecting shift ranges using "S" mode, you can control engine braking forces.

■ Selecting a driving mode

The following patterns can be selected to suit current driving and operating conditions.



1 Power mode

For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

2 Normal mode

3 Snow mode

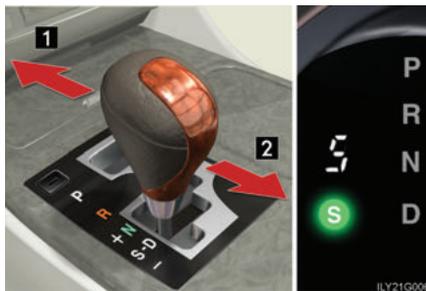
For accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press "SNOW" to return to normal mode.

2-1. Driving procedures

Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

Shift the shift lever to the “S” position and operate the shift lever.



- 1 Upshifting
- 2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “5”.

■ Shift ranges and their functions

- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine revolutions will also increase.
- If you accelerate while in ranges “1” to “5”, the shift range may automatically range up in accordance with the vehicle's speed.

■ Downshifting restrictions in “S” mode

The shift lever cannot be downshifted if the following speeds are exceeded. (The warning buzzer will sound twice in this situation.)

Downshifting	Maximum speed mph (km/h)
5→4	108 (173)
4→3	78 (125)
3→2	58 (94)
2→1	34 (55)

■ When in heavy traffic

To avoid running the hybrid battery (traction battery) down, leave the shift lever in "D" or "S".

■ When driving with the cruise control system (or dynamic radar cruise control system)

The engine brake will not operate in the "S" mode, even when downshifting to "5" or "4". (→P. 129, 132)

■ Snow mode automatic deactivation

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the power switch is turned to "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode after driving in snow mode.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"

→P. 472

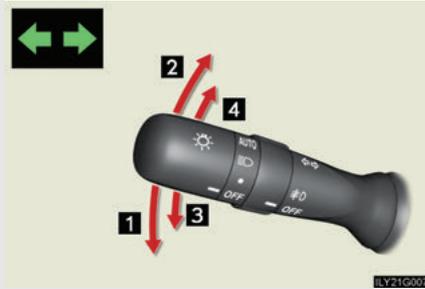
■ If the indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to "S"

This may indicate a malfunction in the transmission. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in "D".)

2-1. Driving procedures

Turn signal lever



- 1 Left turn
- 2 Right turn
- 3 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.
- 4 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change
The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

■ Turn signals can be operated when

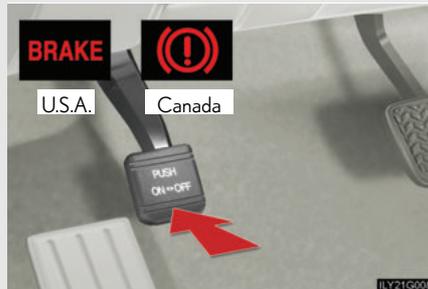
The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ If the indicators flash faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

2-1. Driving procedures

Parking brake



Sets the parking brake*
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

*: Fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.

2

NOTICE

■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

The following gauges, meters and display illuminate when the power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

- 1** Power meter
Displays the instantaneous output from the hybrid system in approximate kilowatts.
- 2** Speedometer
Displays the vehicle speed.
- 3** Fuel gauge
Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.
- 4** Engine coolant temperature gauge
Displays the engine coolant temperature.
- 5** Multi-information display
→P. 119

6 Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

2

Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button



- 1** Changes the display
- 2** Resets the trip meter driving range to "0".

When driving

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights excluding the clock and outside temperature display, can be adjusted.



- 1** Brighter
- 2** Darker
- 3** Maximum brightness

2-2. Instrument cluster

Light sensitive optitron meter

To reduce glare or reflection of the instrument cluster, the cluster glass is tinted automatically or manually. You can select a setting from 7 modes.



- 1 Display the present setting, then change the mode.

To change the mode, press the button once and then again within 6 seconds.

Each time you press the button, the mode changes in the following order;

1. "AUTO - Norm"
2. "AUTO - Lo"
3. "AUTO - Hi"
4. "MANUAL - 1"
5. "MANUAL - 2"
6. "MANUAL - 3"
7. "MANUAL - 4"

Mode 1 to 3: The cluster glass tint will be adjusted automatically depending on the intensity of sunlight in the surrounding.

Mode 4 to 7: The cluster glass tint will be fixed when a certain level of sunlight is reached in the surrounding.

("Norm" to "Hi", "1" to "4" referring to the level of cluster glass tint.)

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 480)

■ **To activate the light sensitivity function properly**

Do not affix a sticker or window tint to the rear window glass, or put an object behind the rear seat.

2

When driving

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
|  | Turn signal indicator
(→P. 110) |  | Cruise control indicator
(→P. 129) |
|  | Headlight high beam indicator
(→P. 122) |  | Damping mode indicator
(→P. 163) |
|  | Headlight indicator
(→P. 122)
(U.S.A.) |  | "AFS OFF" indicator
(→P. 123) |
|  | Tail light indicator
(→P. 122)
(Canada) |  | Intuitive parking assist indicator
(→P. 142)
(if equipped) |
|  | Fog light indicator
(→P. 125) |  | Slip indicator (→P. 165) |
|  | Shift position and shift range indicators
(→P. 108) |  | "AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicators
(→P. 77) |
|  | "Hybrid SNOW" indicator
(→P. 107) |  | Driving ready indicator
(→P. 103) |
|  | "Hybrid PWR" indicator
(→P. 107) | | |

2-2. Instrument cluster

■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems. (→P. 438)



*: These lights turn on when the power switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

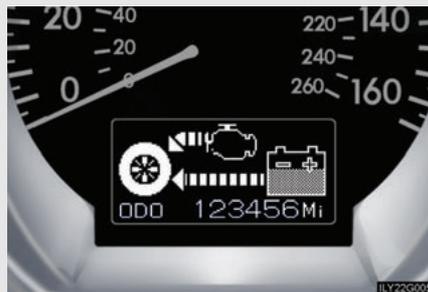
⚠ CAUTION

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you turn to "IG-ON" mode, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

2-2. Instrument cluster Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the status of the hybrid system.



- Energy monitor (→P. 6)
Displays the status of the hybrid system.
- Trip information (→P. 120)
Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information.
- Intuitive parking assist display (if equipped) (→P. 143)
Automatically displayed when using intuitive parking assist.
- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 132)
Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.
- Warning messages (→P. 444)
Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems.

2

When driving

2-2. Instrument cluster



Display items can be switched by pushing the "DISP" switch.

Trip information

■ Driving range

RANGE APPROX
771 Mi

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Average fuel consumption after refueling

TANK AVG
30.0 MPG

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.

■ Current fuel consumption

CURRENT MPG
0 30 60 90

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

■ Average vehicle speed



Displays the average vehicle speed since the hybrid system was last started.

■ System check display

The "LEXUS HYBRID DRIVE" message is displayed 3 seconds after the power switch is set to the "IG-ON" mode. At this time a systems check is conducted, and the normal display is shown upon successful completion of this check.

2

 CAUTION

■ The multi-information display at low temperatures

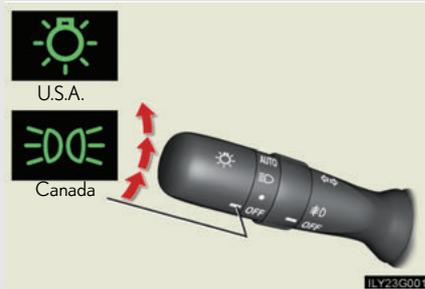
Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

When driving

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

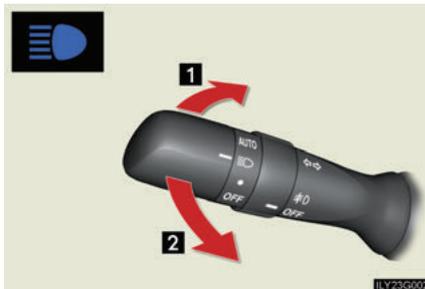


● The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

☰ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

AUTO The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically. (When the power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.)

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS (Adaptive Front lighting System)

AFS improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the level of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

■ Deactivating AFS



- 1 Press the switch to turn it OFF.

The **AFS OFF** indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

2

When driving

■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the hybrid system is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ Automatic light off system

The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after all doors are closed if the power switch has been switched to "ACC" or turned "OFF" while the headlights are turned on. (The lights turn off immediately if the  button on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)

To turn the lights on again, switch to "IG-ON" mode, or turn the light switch "OFF" once and then back to the  or  position.

■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ If the indicator flashes...

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed. (→P. 510)

NOTICE

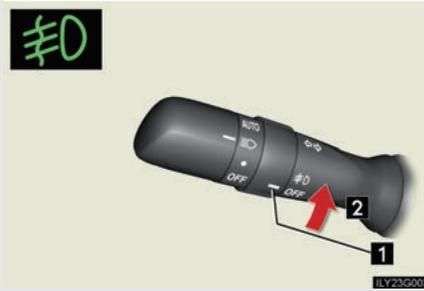
■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. They can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.



- 1 OFF
- 2 ON

2

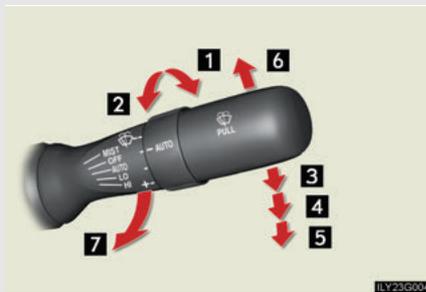
When driving

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Windshield wipers and washer

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



- 1 Sensor sensitivity (low)
- 2 Sensor sensitivity (high)
- 3 Rain-sensing wiper operation
- 4 Low speed wiper operation
- 5 High speed wiper operation
- 6 Temporary operation
- 7 Wash/wipe operation

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

However, the last sweep will not happen if the vehicle is traveling above 106 mph (170 km/h).

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

With the settings other than "AUTO" also, the time until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs is changed depending on vehicle speed.

With "LO" selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

■ Rain drop sensor



The sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

■ In extremely hot or cold weather

The system will turn off if the windshield gets extremely hot (at more than 176°F [80°C]) or cold (at less than 14°F [-10°C]).

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. drip prevention function) can be changed. (→P. 510)

2

When driving

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight cleaner switch

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



- 1 Press the switch to clean the headlights.

■ The headlight cleaner can be operated when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the headlight switch is turned ON.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not use this function, as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control

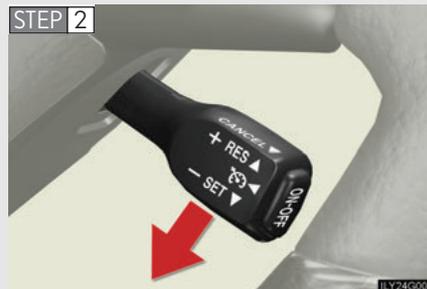
Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.

■ Set the vehicle speed



Turn the "ON-OFF" button ON.

Push the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set the cruise control speed.

■ Adjusting the speed setting



1 Increase speed

2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

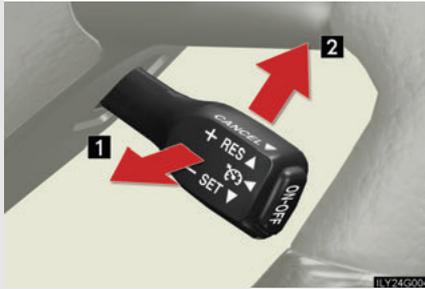
Fine adjustment of the set speed (approximately 1.0 mph [1.6 km/h]) can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Canceling and resuming regular acceleration



1 Cancel

Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in the "D" or "4", "5", or "6" range of "S".
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) and 125 mph (200 km/h).

■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

■ Automatic cruise control cancellation

The set speed is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
- Actual vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated

■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Turn the "ON-OFF" button off once, and then reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
- On winding roads

2-4. Using other driving systems

Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.

■ Select cruise mode



Selecting vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

- 1 Turn the "ON-OFF" button ON.

Push the button once more to deactivate.



Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

- 1 Turn the "ON-OFF" button ON.

- 2 Switch to constant speed control mode.

(Push and hold for approximately 1 second.)

Push the button once more to deactivate.

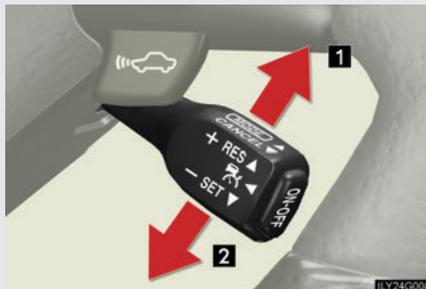
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the power switch is switched to "IG-ON" mode.

■ Driving in the selected cruise control mode



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set.

■ Adjusting the speed setting



- 1 Increase speed
- 2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is displayed.

In the constant speed control mode, fine adjustment of the set speed (approximately 1.0 mph [1.6 km/h]) can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

■ Canceling and resuming the speed setting



- 1 Cancel

Push the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

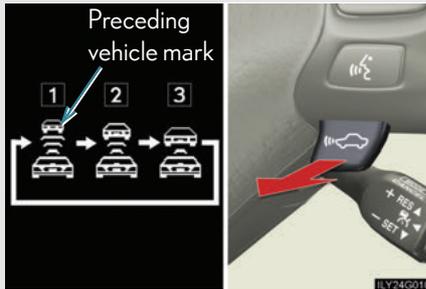
The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

- 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Each pull of the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

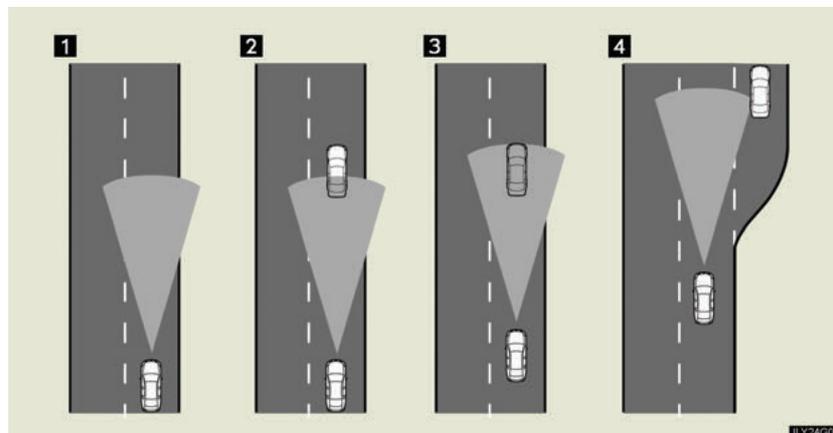
The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is automatically set to the long mode when the power switch is set to the "IG-ON" mode.

A vehicle mark is displayed ahead if one is detected.

Cruising in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles within 400 ft. (120 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those vehicles.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close when traveling on long down-hill slopes.



- 1** Example of constant speed cruising (when there are no vehicles ahead): When vehicle speed is set at 62 mph (100 km/h)

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

- 2** Example of deceleration cruising (when the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed): When fixed speed cruising is set at 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead is driving at 50 mph (80 km/h)

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing on the vehicle ahead.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

- 3 Example of follow-up cruising (when following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed): When the speed is set at 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead is driving at 50 mph (80 km/h)

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

- 4 Example of acceleration (when there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead): When the speed is set at 62 mph (100 km/h) and the vehicle ahead driving at 50 mph (80 km/h) is out of the lane

When the vehicle ahead of you executes a lane change, the system slowly accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached. The system then returns to fixed speed cruising.

■ Dynamic radar cruise control warning lights, messages and buzzers

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to alert you to the need for caution while driving. (→P. 446)

■ The dynamic radar cruise can be set when

- The shift lever is in "D" or the "4", "5" or "6" range of "S".
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 27 mph (43 km/h) and 87 mph (139 km/h).

■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

■ **Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed
- The mode select switch is set to snow mode
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving must be reset by turning the "ON-OFF" button on again.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatically canceling constant speed control**

The set speed is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed is more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
- Vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated

■ **Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings**

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

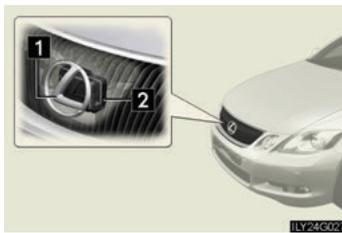
Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 210 ft. (65 m)
Medium	Approximately 150 ft. (45 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)

Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor

■ Certification

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF exposure information

This device complies with the FCC RF exposure requirements.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 CAUTION

■ **Before using dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

■ **To avoid operating the dynamic radar cruise control by mistake**

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate control of speed and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- Where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)
- Where buzzer can be heard often

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the proximity alarm (→P. 453) will not be activated, and an accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and an accident may result.

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable

■ To ensure the radar sensor functions correctly

Do not do the following to the sensor or grille cover as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Stick or attach anything to them
- Leave them dirty
- Disassemble, subject them to strong shocks
- Modify or paint them
- Replace them with non-genuine parts

2-4. Using other driving systems

Intuitive parking assist (if equipped)

Intuitive parking assist uses sensors in the front and rear of the vehicle to detect the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles, and informs the driver of this distance using the multi-information display, the touch screen, and warning beeps.

The system may be used at speeds less than about 6 mph (10 km/h).

■ Sensor types



1 Dual sensors

There are 4 sensors installed in the front bumper, two in the center section to detect obstacles directly ahead, and one in each corner of the bumper, to detect obstacles in those areas.

The dual sensors detect obstacles ahead of the vehicle, and judge whether avoidance maneuvers are necessary (whether the obstacle will come within 0.8 ft. [25 cm] of the vehicle), according to the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle, and the steering wheel position. The screen display and beeps will change accordingly.

2 Rear corner sensors

These sensors detect obstacles around the rear corners of the vehicle.

3 Back sensors

These sensors detect obstacles behind the vehicle.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Intuitive parking assist switch



1 Press the switch to turn the system on/off.

If the intuitive parking assist is turned on, the indicator light will come on, and the system will operate under the following conditions:

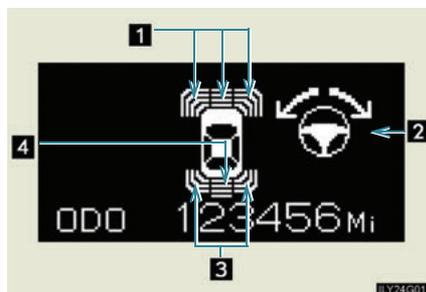
- The dual sensors will operate if the shift lever is in a position other than "R" or "P".
- All corner sensors and the back sensors will operate if the shift lever is in "R".

Multi-information display and touch screen

If the sensors detect an obstacle, it is displayed on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

You can change the conditions under which information is displayed on the touch screen. (→P. 155)

▶ Multi-information display



- 1 Dual sensor detection
- 2 Steering guide symbol
- 3 Rear corner sensor detection
- 4 Back sensor detection

2

When driving

▶ Touch screen



- 1 Dual sensor detection
- 2 Steering guide symbol
- 3 Rear corner sensor detection
- 4 Back sensor detection

If the intuitive parking assist is operated while the rear view monitor is showing, the intuitive parking assist will be shown in the upper right corner of the screen. (→P. 146)

2-4. Using other driving systems

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance and beeps

When the intuitive parking assist is activated, the approximate distance to the obstacle is displayed. Also, if an obstacle with which a collision is possible is detected, a warning beep will sound.

Dual sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen	
		With beeps (danger of collision)	No beeps (no danger of collision)
3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	—

- If the shift lever is in "R", only the corner sensors will detect obstacles.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Rear corner sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen
1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

2

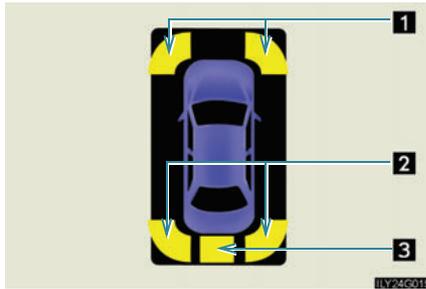
When driving

Back sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen
5.0 ft. (150 cm) to 2.0 ft. (60 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.4 ft. (45 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
1.4 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)
Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

2-4. Using other driving systems

Touch screen (insert display)



- 1 Dual sensor (corner) detection
 - 2 Rear corner sensor detection
 - 3 Back sensor detection
- The tire display and the steering guide symbol will not be displayed.

Dual sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	With beeps (danger of collision)	No beeps (no danger of collision)
3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm)	 (blinking slowly)	 (continuous)
1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)
1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (blinking rapidly)	 (continuous)
Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (continuous)	—

Rear corner sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Touch screen
1.5 ft. (50 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (blinking)
1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (blinking rapidly)
Less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm)	 (continuous)

2

When driving

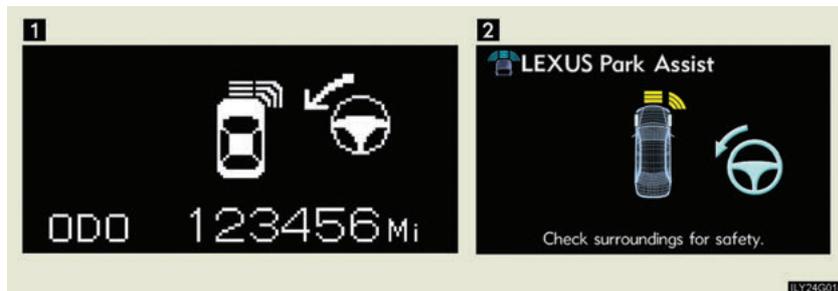
Back sensor

Approximate distance to obstacle	Touch screen
5.0 ft. (150 cm) to 2.0 ft. (60 cm)	 (blinking slowly)
2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.4 ft. (45 cm)	 (blinking)
1.4 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (blinking rapidly)
Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (continuous)

2-4. Using other driving systems

Steering guide symbol

Displays the steering maneuvers required to avoid an obstacle. Move the steering wheel in the direction shown by the arrow.



1 Multi-information display

2 Touch screen

The steering guide symbol only shows the maneuvers necessary to avoid an obstacle.

When using the system, always check your surroundings for safety.

Beeps and obstacle distance

A beep sounds when an obstacle with which there is a danger of collision is detected. As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the interval of the beep becomes shorter.

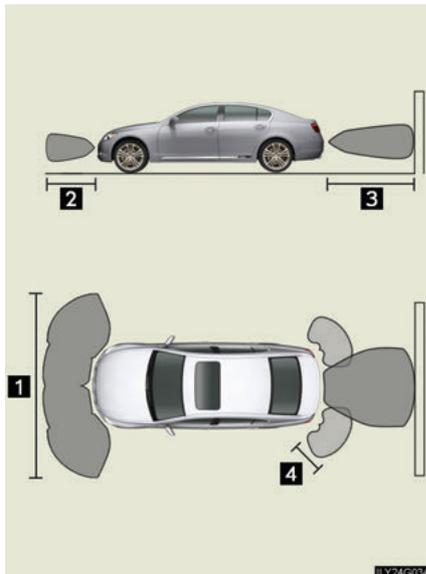
- When the following obstacle distances are reached, the beep changes from intermittent to continuous:
 - If the distance to the obstacle detected by the dual sensors or rear corner sensors is less than 0.8 ft. (25 cm).
 - If the distance to the obstacle detected by the back sensors is less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm).
- If obstacles are detected by the dual sensors in 2 places at once, or if both rear corner sensors detect obstacles at the same time, the system will sound a warning beep for the closer of the 2 obstacles.
- If multiple obstacles are detected in front and behind the vehicle at the same time, the warning beep will change in the following manner:
 - If an obstacle has been detected within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the front or rear of the vehicle (a continuous beep is sounding), and a new obstacle is detected near a different area of the vehicle, the warning beep will sound 6 beeps then one continuous beep.
 - If an obstacle has been detected within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the front or rear of the vehicle (a continuous beep is sounding), and a new obstacle is detected within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of a different area of the vehicle, the warning beeps will sound 2 beeps then one continuous beep.
- You can change the volume of the warning beeps. (→P. 155)

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

Obstacle detection range



- 1 About 10.0 ft. (300 cm)
- 2 About 3.0 ft. (100 cm)
- 3 About 5.0 ft. (150 cm)
- 4 About 1.5 ft. (50 cm)

The detection area of the sensors is shown to the left.

If obstacles move too close to the sensors, they will not be detected.

If the malfunction screen is displayed, the dual sensor detection range will be shortened from 3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm).

If there is snow or mud on a sensor



- 1 Multi-information display
- 2 Touch screen

The same symbol will appear on the insert display.

The location of the affected sensor is displayed. Wipe off whatever is stuck to the sensor. (The above illustration shows something on the left front sensor.)

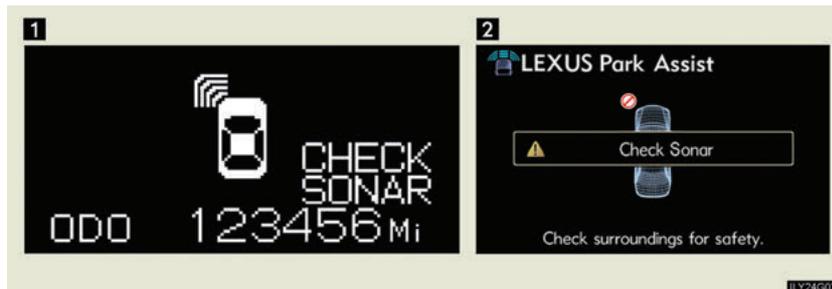
If the message is displayed even though the sensor is not dirty or you have already cleaned it, there is most likely a sensor malfunction. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

If a sensor is malfunctioning



1 Multi-information display

2 Touch screen

The same symbol will appear on the insert display.

The location of the malfunctioning sensor is displayed. (The above illustration shows a malfunctioning left front sensor.) Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

If the steering neutral position is unknown

After the 12 volt battery has been reconnected, the steering sensor will need to be initialized. At this time, if the dual sensors detect an obstacle, the steering guide symbol and both arrows will be displayed.



1 Multi-information display

2 Touch screen

Use one of the following methods to initialize the steering sensor.

- With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, then the right. (The order is not important.)
- Drive for more than 5 minutes on an un-crowded road with as few curves and corners as possible.

If the steering guide symbol disappears, the steering sensor has been initialized. If the steering guide symbol does not disappear, have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

If the steering information is not being correctly received

If the system is unable to receive signals from the steering sensor, or there is a malfunction in the VGRS, the steering guide symbol and both arrows will flash if the dual sensors detect an obstacle.

In this case, have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.



1 Multi-information display

2 Touch screen

If the steering guide symbol is on or flashing, the intuitive parking assist maximum detection range is reduced from 3.0 ft. (100 cm) to 1.5 ft. (50 cm).

The steering sensor malfunction warning display will be aligned with the intuitive parking assist detection display or the intuitive parking assist malfunction warning display.

Warning beep volume and touch screen settings

You can change the warning beep volume and touch screen operating conditions.

Press  to display the "Information" screen. Then touch .

■ Changing the warning beep volume

STEP 1 Touch .

STEP 2 Adjust the beep volume, then touch .

■ Changing the touch screen operating conditions

STEP 1 Touch .

STEP 2 Set one of the following operating condition, then touch .

- : Displays when the sensors detect an obstacle.
- : Displays if maneuvers are required to avoid an obstacle (if an obstacle is likely to come within 0.8 ft. [25 cm] of the vehicle).
- : Does not display the intuitive parking assist detection screen.

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even  has been selected.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ The intuitive parking assist can be operated when

The power switch is in the "IG-ON" mode.

■ When the system malfunctions

- If a malfunction occurs and no obstacles have been detected, a warning is displayed, and a malfunction beep sounds for 7 seconds.
If an obstacle has been detected, or another malfunction occurs in a different sensor, the malfunction beeps will not sound.
- In the following circumstances the displayed warning will disappear:
 - If you switch the screen to a different mode.
 - If you turn OFF the intuitive parking assist main switch.
 - If the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h). Once the vehicle speed drops below 6 mph (10 km/h), the warning will be displayed again.
- If the malfunction screen is displayed, the detection range of the dual sensors is shortened. In this case, the necessity for obstacle evasion (whether the obstacle will come within 0.8 ft. [25 cm] of the vehicle or not) will not be calculated.

■ When using intuitive parking assist

- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
 - The sensors' detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.
 - Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
 - There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within 0.8 ft. (25 cm) of the vehicle before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
 - Braking distance may differ according to the road conditions (rain, gravel etc.).
 - It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of air conditioning system.
 - For long obstacles such as walls, the obstacle warning may change as the obstacle gets closer.

- In the following situations, the intuitive parking assist may not function correctly, possibly leading to an accident.
 - There is ice, snow or mud on the sensors. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
 - The sensor area is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
 - The vehicle angle is especially wide.
 - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
 - When driving on bumpy, sloped or gravel roads, or over grass.
 - If there is something producing ultrasonic waves nearby, such as another vehicle's horn, motorcycle engine noise, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles, or another vehicle using the intuitive parking assist.
 - In heavy rain, or if water is splashed on the sensors.
 - If a commercial fender pole or radio antenna is installed.
 - If towing eyelet is installed on your vehicle.
 - If moving towards a high curb or a curb corner.
 - Objects such as signs may cause the detection distance to shorten.
 - The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
Objects lower than the sensors or thin stakes etc. may be detected initially, but as they draw closer, they may cease to be detected.
 - If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.

■ Obstacles that may not be detected correctly

The following obstacles may not be detected.

- Thin objects such as wire, fencing or rope.
- Objects that absorb sound waves, such as cotton or snow.
- Objects with sharp corners.
- Objects where the upper section projects out over the lower section.
- Low objects.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ Certification

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions;
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.
Cet appareil ISM est conforme a la norme NMB-001 du Canada.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

To reduce the chance of injury in the event of an accident or sudden stop, keep the switch box closed.

■ When using intuitive parking assist

Observe the following precautions.

- The back sensors and rear corner sensors do not judge whether there is danger of a collision, nor whether the obstacle can be avoided using the steering wheel. When reversing, always check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety.
- The steering guide symbol (arrow) is an approximate guide regarding obstacles. It is not driving instructions. When moving forward or reversing, always check your surroundings for safety and drive carefully.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas, as this may cause the intuitive parking assist to function incorrectly, possibly leading to an accident.

 NOTICE

■ **When using intuitive parking assist**

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- A beep does not sound when you turn the main switch ON.
- The intuitive parking assist operation display flashes, and a beep sound when no obstacle has been detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without a beep.

■ **When changing tires**

If you install tires of a size other than that recommended by the manufacturer, the system will be unable to correctly detect steering wheel movement. Always use tire sizes recommended by the manufacturer.

■ **When washing the vehicle**

When washing the vehicle using high pressure cleaning equipment, do not spray water directly on the sensors. Subjecting the sensors to high pressure impact may cause a malfunction.

2-4. Using other driving systems

Rear view monitor system

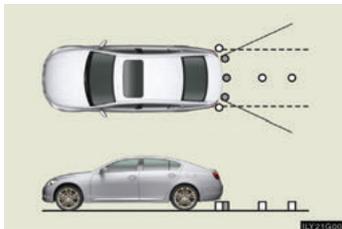
The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.



Rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in "R".

If you move the lever out of "R", the screen returns to the previous one.

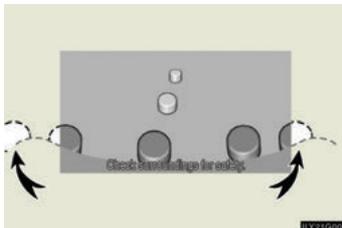
■ Displayed area



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

▶ Corner of bumper



■ Rear view monitor system camera



In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

■ Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* peculiar to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect—A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

- **When using the rear view monitor system, observe these precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.**
 - Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
 - Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
 - Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
 - Do not use the system if the trunk is open.
- **Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system**
 - If the back of the vehicle is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
 - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
 - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
 - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

2-4. Using other driving systems

AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)

AVS controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selecting an optimum driving mode allows good vehicle posture and steering wheel operation in conjunction with VGRS, EPS and active stabilizer suspension system (if equipped).



- 1** Sports mode
For winding mountain road driving or high speed driving.
- 2** Normal mode
For normal driving.

2

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Restrains the vehicle from slipping when driving on slick road surfaces or in the event of sudden braking.

■ BA (Brake Assist)

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

■ TRAC (Traction Control)

Maintains drive power and prevents the rear wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

■ Hill-start assist control

Helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope. It operates for approximately 5 seconds at maximum.

■ VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)

Adjusts the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement.

■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel.

■ Active stabilizer suspension system (if equipped)

Turns at smaller angles to maintain the stable vehicle posture.

■ **VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)**

Provides integrated control of the ABS, VSC, TRAC, hill-start assist control, VGRS and EPS systems.

Maintains vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output, and the movement of the front wheels.

■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)**

→P. 169

2

When the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backwards when starting on an incline, or if the rear wheels spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

The slip indicator light flashes as well when ABS is operating.

When driving

2-4. Using other driving systems

To disable TRAC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, TRAC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.



Push the button to turn off TRAC.

The slip indicator light should come on.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

Once you turn the power switch "OFF", TRAC will be activated automatically.

■ Automatic TRAC reactivation

TRAC is reactivated when vehicle speed exceeds 30 mph (50 km/h) even if "TRAC OFF" has been turned off.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, BA, VSC, TRAC, hill-start assist control and VGRS systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the hybrid system is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
 - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ Hill-start assist control is operational when

- The shift lever is in the "D" or "S".
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **VGRS is disabled in the following situations**

- During stopping or the steering wheel has been moved for a long time while driving at lower speeds.
- After the hybrid system is restarted at less than -22°F (-30°C).

■ **Reduced effectiveness of EPS**

The effectiveness of EPS is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the hybrid system OFF. The system should return to normal about 10 minutes.

2

When driving

⚠ CAUTION
<p>Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:</p> <p>■ The ABS does not operate effectively when</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded. ● The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on the wet or slick road. <p>■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating on the wet or slick roads</p> <p>The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads ● When driving with tire chains ● When driving over bumps in the road ● When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads <p>■ TRAC may not operate effectively when</p> <p>Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC is operating. Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.</p>

2-4. Using other driving systems

CAUTION

■ The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively when

- On steep inclines.
- On icy surfaces.

■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the specified tire pressure level.

The ABS and VSC will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the VDIM, and may cause the system to malfunction.

2-4. Using other driving systems

PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

Safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage when the radar sensor detects an unavoidable frontal collision.

■ Pre-collision seat belts (front seats only)

The seat belts are immediately retracted as the effect of the pretensioner is increased (→P. 42), to provide even greater constraining force to protect the driver and passengers. In the event of sudden braking or skidding, the system will operate even if no obstacle has been detected.

■ Pre-collision brake assist

Applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

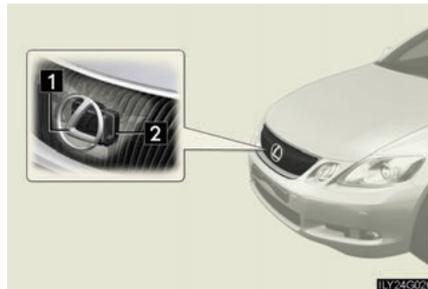
■ Pre-collision AVS

If the system determines that the collision is unavoidable, the operation of AVS (→P. 163) helps prevent the vehicle front from going down when hard brakes are applied.

2

When driving

Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

- 1 Grille cover
- 2 Radar sensor

■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

2-4. Using other driving systems

■ The pre-collision system is operational when

- Seat belt (linked to the radar sensor)
 - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
 - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).
 - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Seat belts (linked to brake operation)
 - Vehicle speed exceeds 9 mph (15 km/h).
 - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
 - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Brake Assist
 - Vehicle speed is above 18 mph (30 km/h).
 - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).
 - The brake pedal is depressed.
- AVS
 - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
 - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h).

■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of collision

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

■ When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 439, 446)

 CAUTION

■ **Handling the radar sensor**

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area are subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.

■ **Limitations of the pre-collision system**

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit—

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

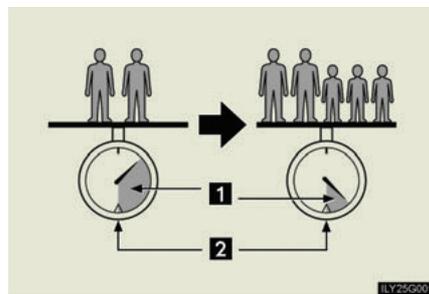
For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 - 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle.

That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 175)

Example on your vehicle



- 1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity

2

When driving

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 815 lb. (370 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

$$815 \text{ lb.} - 366 \text{ lb.} = 449 \text{ lb.} \quad (370 \text{ kg} - 166 \text{ kg} = 204 \text{ kg})$$

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

$$449 \text{ lb.} - 388 \text{ lb.} = 61 \text{ lb.} \quad (204 \text{ kg} - 176 \text{ kg} = 28 \text{ kg})$$

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

2-5. Driving information

CAUTION

■ Storage precautions

- Do not place anything on the package tray behind the rear seatback. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not drive with objects on top of the instrument panel. They may interfere with the driver's field of view or move during sharp acceleration or turning, thus impairing the driver's control of the vehicle. In an accident they may injure the vehicle occupants.
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during an accident or sudden braking.

■ Weight of the load

- Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control resulting in an accident which may cause death or serious injury.
- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

2-5. Driving information

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

■ **Total load capacity: 815 lb. (370 kg)**

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

■ **Seating capacity: 5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)**

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.

■ **Towing capacity**

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

■ **Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

2

When driving

■ **Total load capacity and seating capacity**

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. (→P.393)

 **CAUTION**

■ **Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.

It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

2-5. Driving information

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine/inverter coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

■ **When driving the vehicle**

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to "P" without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released.

2

Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Use SAE Class "S" type radial tire chains, with the exception of radial cable chains or V-bar type chains.
 - Install the chains on the rear tires.
 - Refer to the explanation that comes with the tire chains for installation instructions.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

When driving

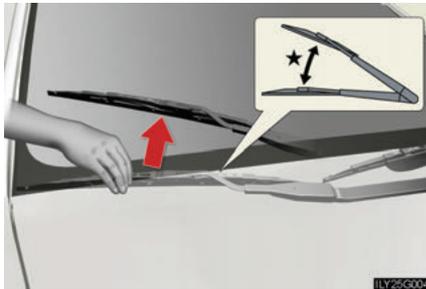
2-5. Driving information

Shifting the windshield wiper position

You can shift the wipers to the rest position manually. (In heavy snow or icy condition etc.)

Grip the hook section of the wiper arm firmly when shifting the wiper position.

▶ To rest position

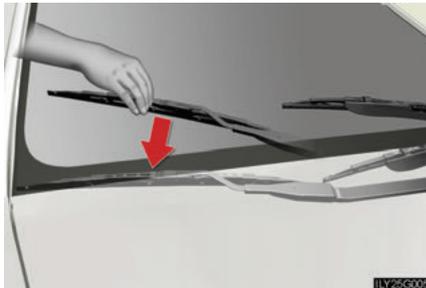


Raise the wiper in line with the windshield.

You can stand the wipers up for the rest position.

*: More than 3.9 in. (10 cm)

▶ To retract position



Lower the wipers by pressing on the upper part of the hook section.

■ Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying instructions.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Driving with snow tires**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the specified level of tire inflation pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

■ Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

2-5. Driving information

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ **Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

2-5. Driving information

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your Lexus is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



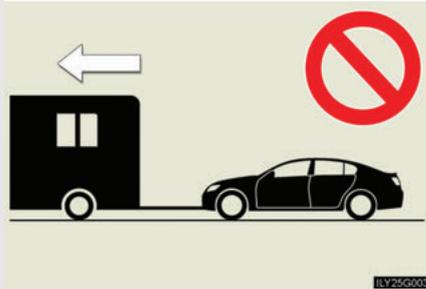
2

When driving

2-5. Driving information

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



NOTICE

- **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**
Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

3-1. Using the touch screen	184	Using the Bluetooth®	
Touch screen	184	phone	265
Setting the touch screen	187	Setting the hands-free	
3-2. Using the air conditioning		system	278
system and defogger	192	3-5. Using the interior lights	303
Automatic air conditioning		Interior lights list	303
system	192	3-6. Using the storage	
Rear window and outside rear		features	306
view mirror defoggers	199	List of storage features	306
3-3. Using the audio system	200	3-7. Other interior features	312
Audio system type	200	Sun visors	312
Using the radio	203	Vanity mirror	313
Using the cassette player	212	Clock	314
Using the CD player	216	Outside temperature	
Playing MP3 and WMA		display	315
discs	224	Ashtrays	316
Using the DVD player	232	Cigarette lighter	317
Playing DVD video/audio	235	Power outlet	318
Playing video CD	247	Seat heaters	319
DVD player and DVD video		Seat heaters and	
disc information	251	ventilators	321
Optimal use of the audio/		Armrest	323
video system	255	Rear sunshade	324
Using the steering		Floor mats	326
switches	259	Trunk features	327
3-4. Using the hands-free		Garage door opener	329
system	261	Compass	334
Hands-free system	261	Lexus Link System	338

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air-conditioning, adjust the screen display etc.

▶ Vehicles with navigation system



▶ Vehicles without navigation system



The "Information" screen shown in the above illustration is displayed when the  is pressed.

3-1. Using the touch screen

Switches	Page
"CLIMATE"	P.192
"AUDIO"	P.200
"INFO" (Displaying the "Information" screen)	P.184
"DISP" (Adjusting the display)	P.188
Trip Information. (Displaying the "Trip Information" screen)	P.6
Maintenance	Navigation System Owner's Manual
Telephone	P.265
Calendar	Navigation System Owner's Manual
"LEXUS Park Assist"	P.155
Language	P.187
Screen Setting	P.190
Adjust Clock	P.314/ Navigation System Owner's Manual

3

Interior features

The initial screen



If the power switch is set to "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode, the initializing screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

3-1. Using the touch screen

■ To avoid damaging the touch screen

- Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
- Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

■ When using the touch screen

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the “Display” screen or remove your sunglasses.

3-1. Using the touch screen Setting the touch screen

You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.

Language settings

The language used for all voice guidance, messages and touch screen switches may be changed.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3



Select the desired language.

STEP 4 Touch .

Turning off the beep sound

The beep that sounds when a touch screen button is touched can be turned off.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2



Touch .

3-1. Using the touch screen

Adjusting the display

STEP 1 Press **DISP.**

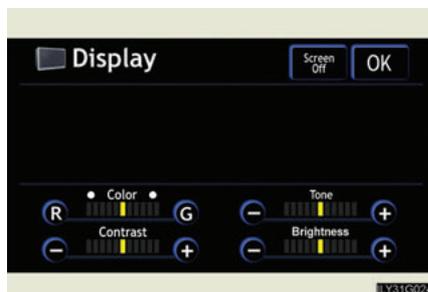
STEP 2 Adjust the display as desired using **R / -** and **G / +**.

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.

► Vehicles with CD player



► Vehicles with DVD player



	R / -	G / +
Color	Red	Green
Tone	Lighter	Darker
Contrast	Weaker	Stronger
Brightness	Darker	Brighter

■ “Day Mode”



When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims. However the screen can be switched to “Day Mode”.

The screen will stay in “Day Mode” when the headlights are turned on until **Day Mode** is touched again.

If the instrument panel light control is set to “MAX”, “Day Mode” is not displayed.

■ To turn off the picture display

If **Screen Off** is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.

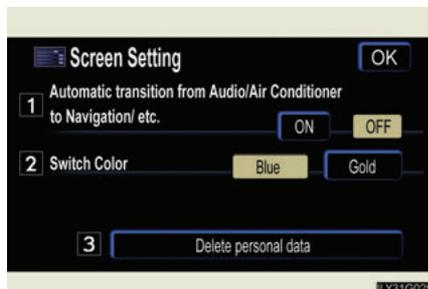
3-1. Using the touch screen

Screen settings

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

The following screen settings can be changed.



1 Automatic transition

20 seconds after air-conditioning or audio system use, the system will return the display to the previous screen.

2 Switch color

You can select the switch color.

3 Delete personal data

The following personal data is deleted:

- User selection settings
- Phone book data
- Dialed numbers and received calls
- Speed dial
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Security code
- Maintenance conditions*
- Maintenance information "off" setting*
- Memory points*
- Areas to avoid*
- Previous points*
- Route trace*

*: If the navigation system is equipped

■ **Setting automatic transition**

STEP 1 Touch **ON** or **OFF**.

STEP 2 Press **OK**.

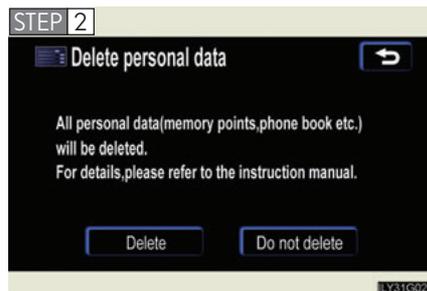
■ **Setting the switch color**

STEP 1 Touch **Blue** or **Gold**.

STEP 2 Press **OK**.

■ **To delete personal data**

STEP 1 Touch the **Delete personal data**.



Touch **Delete**.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once initialized.

3

Interior features

■ **When deleting personal data**

Data can only be deleted when the vehicle is stopped.

■ **When selling the vehicle**

Be sure to initialize both the call history and personal data. (→P.190)

■ **If you touch the **

The display returns to the previous screen.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press  to display the air conditioning operation screen.



The above illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the navigation system. The position of  may differ slightly for vehicles not equipped with the navigation system.

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press .

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic mode.

➔ Automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press \wedge to increase the temperature and \vee to decrease the temperature on the .

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press \wedge to increase the temperature and \vee to decrease the temperature on the .

Press \wedge (increase) or \vee (decrease) on the  to separately adjust the temperature for the passenger and driver sides (dual mode). Touch **DUAL** to return the driver and passenger side temperatures to the same setting (simultaneous mode).

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time **DUAL** is touched.

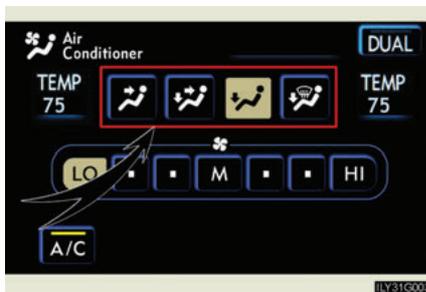
3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Adjusting the fan speed

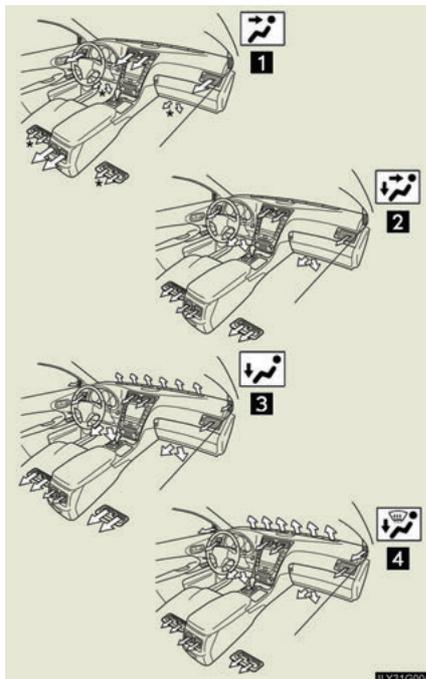
Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operating screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

■ Changing the air outlets



Touch any mode on the operating screen.



1 Air flows to the upper body.

2 Air flows to the upper body and feet.

3 Air flows to the feet.

4 Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

*: Only in the automatic mode

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

Defogging the windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

3

Interior features

Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

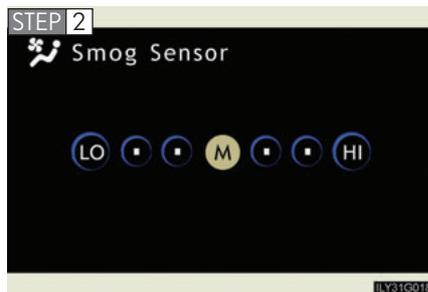
Usually the system will turn OFF automatically approximately 3 minutes later.

To stop the operation, press  again.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

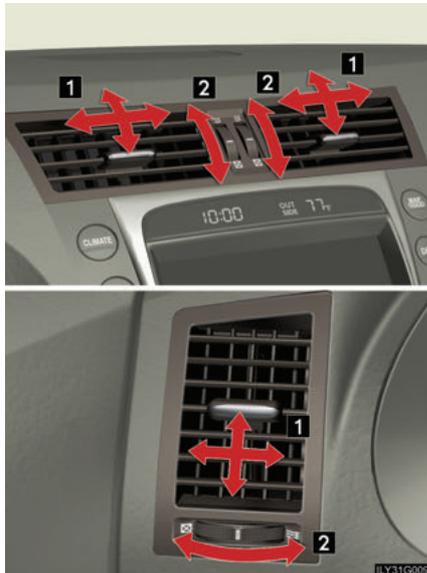
STEP 1 Press  until the smog sensor screen appears while the vehicle is stopped.



Touch any switch of  (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operating screen.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

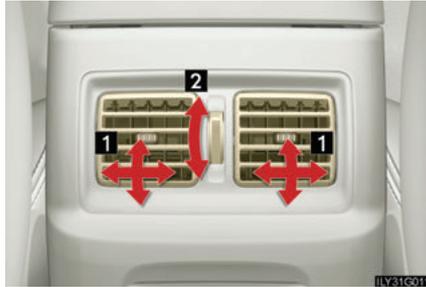
► Front outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

► Rear seat outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after the switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ Outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C).

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is touched.

3

Interior features

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is OFF, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode ON will activate the air conditioning system.

■ Micro dust and pollen removal mode

- When the outside air is cold, the following may occur.
 - Outside air mode does not switch to .
 - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
 - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge

Do not leave the automatic air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove rain-drops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.



Press the button.

Press the button to turn on the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers. The defoggers will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

■ Operating conditions

The power switch must be in the "IG-ON" mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge

Turn the defoggers off when the hybrid system is off.

3-3. Using the audio system

Audio system type

CD and (optional) DVD player with changer, cassette player, and AM/FM radio

This illustration below is for a vehicle not equipped with the DVD player.



A Vehicles with navigation system

B Vehicles without navigation system

The audio system appearance and screen may differ slightly for vehicles equipped with the DVD player.

CD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, MP3 discs and WMA discs.
 DVD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, video CDs, MP3 discs, WMA discs, DVD video discs and DVD audio discs.

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 203
Using the cassette player	P. 212
Using the CD player	P. 216
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 224
Using the DVD player	P. 232
Playing DVD video/audio	P. 235
Playing video CD	P. 247
DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 251
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 255
Using the steering wheel switches	P. 259

■ **Using cellular phones**

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

3-3. Using the audio system

CAUTION

■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada

● Part 15 of the FCC Rules

FCC Warning:

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

● Laser products

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes yourself. This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
- This product utilizes a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

NOTICE

■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary with the hybrid system off.

■ To avoid damaging the audio/video system

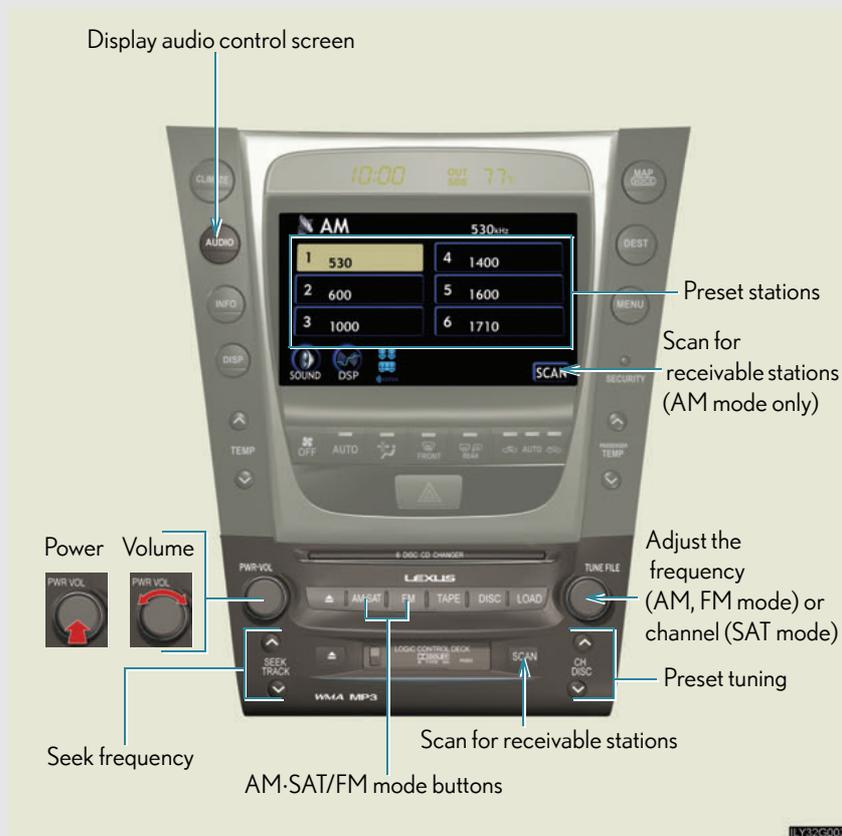
Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.

3-3. Using the audio system

Using the radio

Press **AM-SAT** or **FM** to choose either an AM or FM band.

When you press **AUDIO** while listening to the radio, the following audio control screen appears.



This illustration is a vehicle not equipped with the DVD player.

3-3. Using the audio system

Setting station presets (excluding XM[®] satellite radio)

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning the  dial or pressing



STEP 2 Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM[®] satellite radio)

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

● AM station

STEP 1 Touch  on the screen or press  until “P·SCAN” appears.

Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, touch  or press  once again.

● FM station

STEP 1 Press  until “P·SCAN” appears.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

■ Scanning all radio stations within range

● AM station

STEP 1 Touch **SCAN** on the screen or press **SCAN**.

“SCAN” appears on the screen and all stations with reception will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, touch **SCAN** or press **SCAN** once again.

● FM station

STEP 1 Press **SCAN**.

“SCAN” appears on the screen and all stations with reception will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

3

Interior features

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

STEP 1



Touch **TYPE** or **TYPE** on the screen.

3-3. Using the audio system

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- ROCK
- EASYLIS (Easy listening)
- CLS/JAZZ (Classical music and Jazz)
- R & B (Rhythm and Blues)
- INFORM (Information)
- RELIGION
- MISC (Miscellaneous)
- ALARM (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO PTY" appears on the display.

When a program is set, "TYPE SEEK" appears.

STEP 2 Touch **TYPE SEEK** on the screen or press \wedge or \vee on .

The radio seeks or scans the station by the relevant program type.

If no radio station of that type is found, "NOTHING" appears on the screen.

■ Displaying radio text messages



Touch **MSG** on the screen.

If "MSG" appears on the screen, a text message may be displayed.

■ Traffic announcement



Touch **TRAF** on the screen.

“TRAF SEEK” appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, “NOTHING” appears on the display.

■ XM[®] satellite radio (if equipped)

■ Receiving XM[®] satellite radio



Press **AM-SAT** until “SAT” appears on the screen.

The display changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

AM → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

STEP 2 Turn the  dial to select a desired channel from all the categories

or press **^** or **v** on  to select a desired channel in the current category.

■ Presetting XM[®] satellite radio channels

Select the desired channel. Touch one of the preset stations (1 - 6) and hold it until you hear a beep.

■ Changing the channel category

Touch **TYPE** or **TYPE** on the screen.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Scanning XM[®] satellite radio channels

- Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Touch **TYPE SCAN** on the screen or press **SCAN**.
“SCAN” appears on the screen.

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, touch **TYPE SCAN** or press the button once again.

- Scanning preset channels

STEP 1 Touch **TYPE SCAN** on the screen or press **SCAN** and hold it until you hear a beep.
“P-SCAN” appears on the screen.

STEP 2 When the desired channel is reached, touch **TYPE SCAN** or press the button once again.

■ Displaying the title and artist name



Touch **TEXT** on the screen.

The screen will display up to 16 characters.

Touch the button once again to return to the previous screen.

■ When the 12 volt battery is disconnected

All preset stations are erased.

■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ XM[®] satellite radio

The optional Lexus genuine satellite radio tuner and antenna allows you to receive and play XM[®] satellite radio broadcasts. (Subscription is required. Not available in Hawaii and Alaska.)*

● XM[®] subscriptions

For detailed information about XM[®] satellite radio or to subscribe, visit XM[®] on the web at www.xmradio.com or call (800) 967-2346.

● Radio ID

You will need the radio ID when activating XM[®] service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using the  dial, and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.

● Satellite tuner

The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM[®] satellite radio.

*: Terms and services provided by XM[®] Radio are subject to change without notice.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ If the satellite radio does not operate normally

If a problem occurs with the XM[®] tuner, a message will appear on the screen. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM [®] antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM [®] antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
UPDATING	You have not subscribed to XM [®] satellite radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact XM [®] satellite radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact XM [®] satellite radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM [®] signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
-----	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.

The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM[®] Listener Care Center at (800) 967-2346 during the following hours*.

Monday - Saturday: 6 a.m. - 2 a.m. Eastern Time

Sunday: 8 a.m. - 8 p.m. Eastern Time

*: Subject to change without notice.

■ Certifications for the radio tuner

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocating the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

3-3. Using the audio system

Using the cassette player

Insert a cassette tape or press **TAPE** with a tape inserted.

When you press **AUDIO** while listening to the tape, the following audio control screen appears.



This illustration is a vehicle not equipped with the DVD player.

Selecting a track

■ Skip a number of tracks at a time

STEP 1 Press \wedge on  .



Press \wedge until the number you want to skip appears.

9 tracks can be skipped at a time.

■ Rewind a number of tracks at a time

STEP 1 Press \vee on  .



Press \vee until the number you want to rewind appears.

9 tracks can be rewound at a time.

Note that the number includes the current track.

3-3. Using the audio system

Using Dolby® Noise Reduction

Touch  on the screen.

Reduces the level of noise for tapes recorded with Dolby NR only.

Dolby noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. DOLBY and the double-D symbol  are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

■ Canceling noise reduction, skip play, repeat play, rewind and fast forward

To cancel ,  and : Touch the corresponding button on the screen.

To cancel  and : Touch the corresponding button on the screen or press .

■ Auto-reverse feature

After the cassette player reaches the end of a tape, it automatically reverses and begins to play the other side, regardless of whether the cassette was playing or fast forwarding.

■ When the cassette player does not operate correctly due to the cassette recording conditions

Forwarding to the beginning of a track, repeat, blank tape skip and fast-forward may not be possible in the following situations:

- The interval between tracks is less than 3 seconds (beginning of track and repeat playback) or less than 15 seconds (blank tape skip).
- When there is noise between 2 tracks.
- The beginning and end of subsequent tracks are not clearly defined.

■ Cleaning the cassette player

Cassette player components (heads, capstan, pinch rollers) should be cleaned at least once a month using a cleaning tape to remove dirt and dust that can easily build up.

■ Using long playing cassette tapes

Avoid using tapes with a length of more than 90 minutes, as the tape used is very thin and may become tangled in the cassette player.

 NOTICE

■ **Cassette tapes that cannot be used**

Do not use a cassette tape if it has been damaged or tangled or if its label is peeling off. Such tapes may affect playing speed and may also get stuck in the player.

■ **Cassette player precautions**

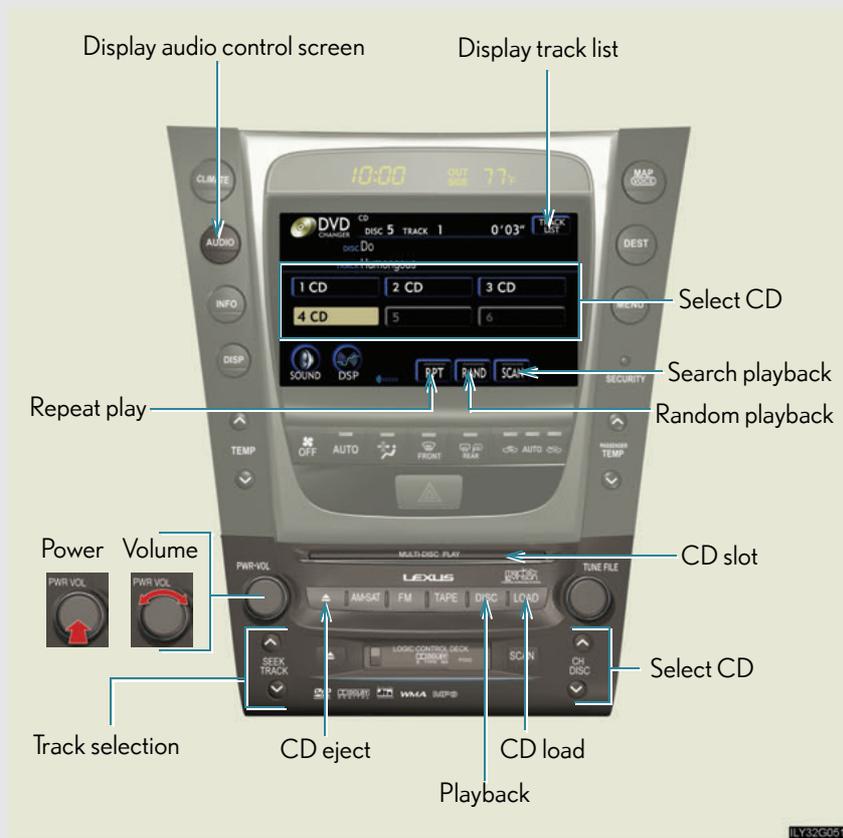
- Store cassette tapes away from direct sunlight.
- Do not insert anything other than cassette tapes into the cassette player.
- Do not apply oil to the cassette player.

3-3. Using the audio system

Using the CD player

Insert a CD or press **DISC** with a CD inserted.

When you press **AUDIO** while listening to a CD, the following audio control screen appears.



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

Loading a CD

■ Loading a single CD

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a CD after the CD/DVD player door opens.

■ Loading multiple CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold  until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a CD after the CD/DVD player door opens.

STEP 3 After inserting a CD, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next CD after the CD/DVD door has opened.

Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all CDs.

To cancel the operation, press the  or  button. If you do not insert a CD within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

Ejecting CDs

■ Ejecting a CD

STEP 1 To select the CD to be ejected, touch the desired disc number (1 - 6) on the screen or press  or  on .

STEP 2 Press  and remove the CD.

■ Ejecting all CDs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the CDs.

3-3. Using the audio system

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

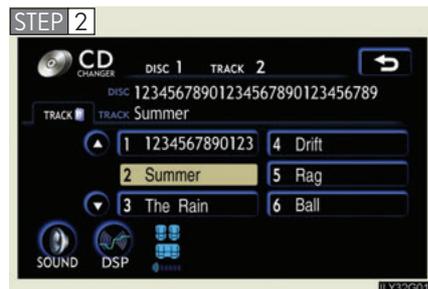
■ Selecting a track

Press \wedge to move up and \vee to move down using  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold \wedge or \vee on .

■ Selecting a track from the track list

STEP 1 Touch  on the screen.



Touch the desired track number.

 or : changes the list by 6 track groups.

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Scanning a CD

STEP 1 Touch  on the screen.

“SCAN” appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Touch  once again when the desired track is reached.

Selecting a CD

■ To select a CD to play

Touch the desired disc number (1 - 6) on the screen or press \wedge or \vee on



■ To scan loaded CDs

STEP 1 Touch and hold **SCAN** on the screen until "D·SCAN" appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each CD will be played.

STEP 2 Touch **SCAN** once again when the desired CD is reached.

Random playback

■ Current CD

Touch **RAND** on the screen.

Songs are played in random order until random playback is canceled.

■ All CDs

Touch and hold **RAND** on the screen until "D·RAND" appears.

Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in random order until the button is touched once again.

Repeating a track or a disc

■ Repeating a track

Touch **RPT** on the screen.

■ Repeating a disc

Touch and hold **RPT** on the screen until "D·RPT" appears.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Touch **RAND**, **RPT**, or **SCAN** on the screen once again.

■ Displaying the title and artist name

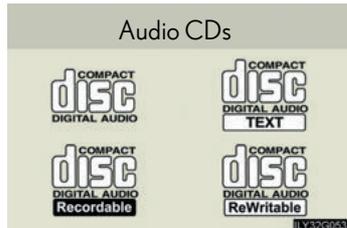
If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the title of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 16 letters can be displayed.

■ Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No CD or No Disc	There is no disc in the CD or DVD changer	Insert a disc
CD X Check or DISC X Check	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The disc X is dirty or damaged• The disc X is inserted upside down• The disc X is not playable with the player	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Clean the disc• Insert the disc correctly• Confirm the disc is playable with the player
CD Error or DVD Error	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• There is a malfunction within the system• Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Eject the disc• Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down
NO MUSIC FILE	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc	Eject the disc

■ **CD compatibility**



Only audio CDs with the marks shown to the left can be used.

The following products may not be playable on your CD player.

- SACDs
- dts-CDs
- Copy-protected CDs

■ **CD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

3-3. Using the audio system

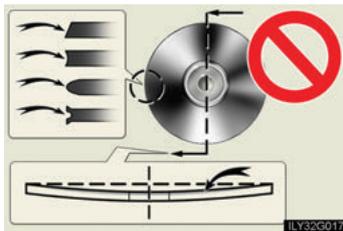
NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the player and render the disc insert/eject function unusable.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).



- Low-quality and deformed discs.



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have the label peeled off.

 NOTICE

■ **Player precautions**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.
- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.



3-3. Using the audio system

Playing MP3 and WMA discs

Insert an MP3 or WMA disc or press **DISC** with a disc inserted.

When you press **AUDIO** during playback of the disc, the following audio control screen appears.



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

Loading, ejecting and selecting MP3 and WMA discs

Refer to the section titled “Using the CD player” for details. (→P. 216)

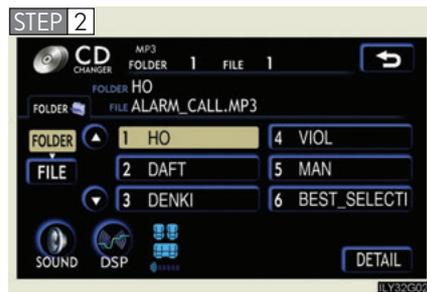
Selecting a folder

■ **Selecting a folder**

Touch “FOLDER ▲” or “▼” on the screen to select the previous/next folder.

■ **Selecting a folder from the folder list**

STEP 1 Touch **FOLDER LIST** on the screen.



Touch the desired folder number.

▲ or ▼: changes the list by 6 folder groups.

DETAIL: displays the details of the file currently playing.

FILE: displays the file list.

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ **Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder**

Touch and hold **SCAN** on the screen until “FLD·SCAN” appears. When the desired folder is reached, touch **SCAN** once again.

3-3. Using the audio system

Selecting and scanning files

■ Selecting one file at a time

Turn the  dial or press \wedge or \vee on  to select the desired file.

■ Selecting a file from the file list

STEP 1 Touch  on the screen to turn the folder list on.



Touch  on the folder list screen.



Touch the desired file number.

 or : changes the list by 6 groups.

: displays the folder list.

: displays the details of the file currently playing.

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch  on the screen.

When the desired file is reached, touch  once again.

File repeat

Touch **RPT** on the screen.

Folder repeat

Touch and hold **RPT** on the screen until the “FLD RPT” appears.

Random playback

- **To play files from a particular folder in random order**

Touch **RAND** on the screen.

- **To play all the files on a disc in random order**

Touch and hold **RAND** on the screen until the “FLD RAND” appears.

- **Canceling random, repeat and scan playback**

Touch **RAND**, **RPT** or **SCAN** on the screen once again.

- **Error messages**

→P. 220

- **CD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

- **If CDs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

CDs may be damaged and may not play properly.

- **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media TMAudio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards and to the media/formats recorded by them that can be used.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
- MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
*: Compatible with VBR
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)
*: Only compatible with 2-channel playback

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible, depending on the status of the CD-R or CD-RW. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 level 1, level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Multi-sessions

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

3-3. Using the audio system

- MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

- Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

■ **CD-R and CD-RW discs**

- CD-R/CD-RW discs that have not been subject to the “finalizing process” (a process that allows discs to be played on a conventional CD player) cannot be played.
- It may not be possible to play CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, condensation, etc. on the lens of the unit.
- It may not be possible to play discs recorded on a personal computer depending on the application settings and the environment. Record with the correct format. (For details, contact the appropriate application manufacturers of the applications.)
- CD-R/CD-RW discs may be damaged by direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures or other storage conditions. The unit may be unable to play damaged discs.
- If you insert a CD-RW disc into the MP3/WMA player, playback will begin more slowly than with a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Recordings on CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played using the DDCCD (Double Density CD) system.

■ **Unsuitable discs, and player precautions**

→P. 222

3-3. Using the audio system Using the DVD player (if equipped)

Insert a disc or press **DISC** with a disc inserted.

When you press **AUDIO** during the playback of the disc, the following audio/video control screen appears.



This illustration shows the audio system of a vehicle with the navigation system.

Loading a discs

■ Loading a single disc

STEP 1 Push **LOAD**.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the DVD player door opens.

■ Loading multiple discs

STEP 1 Press and hold **LOAD** until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the DVD player door opens.

STEP 3 After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the DVD player door has opened.

STEP 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the **LOAD** or **DISC** button. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

■ DVD hint screen



This screen appears when a DVD video, DVD audio or video CD is first selected with the power switch in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

Touch **OK** once you have read the message.

3-3. Using the audio system

Ejecting discs

■ Ejecting a disc

STEP 1 To select the disc to be ejected, touch the desired disc on the screen or press \wedge or \vee on .

STEP 2 Press  and remove the disc.

■ Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the discs.

Selecting a disc

■ To select a disc to play



Touch the desired disc on the screen or press \wedge or \vee on .

- Audio CD, CD text→P. 216
- MP3/WMA disc→P. 224
- DVD video/audio→P. 235
- Video CD→P. 247

3-3. Using the audio system

Playing DVD video/audio

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the power switch in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

■ Video control screen

Press  while the disc is playing, the following screen appears.



3

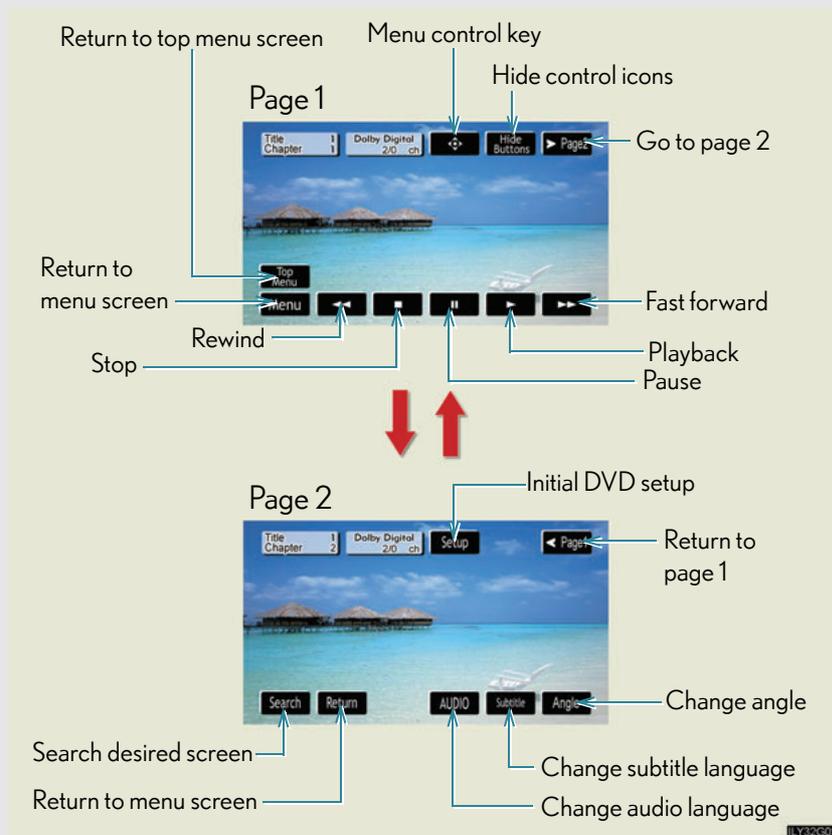
Interior features

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Control icon screen

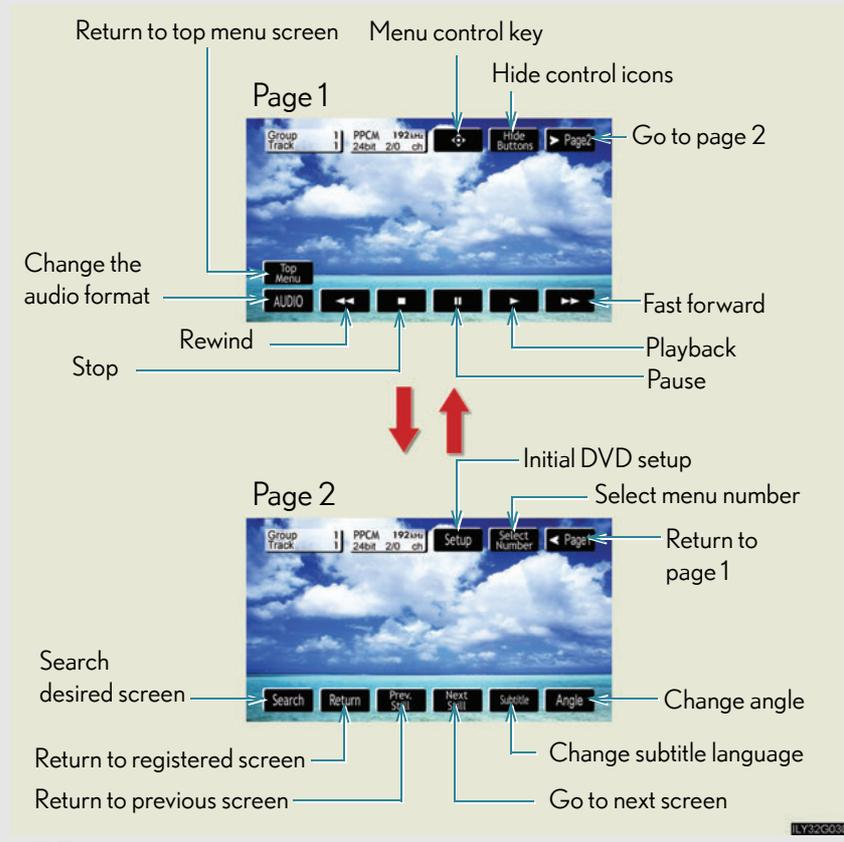
Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching video, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

► DVD audio mode



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Fast forwarding/rewinding disc

Touch and hold  or  on the screen or press and hold \wedge or \vee

on  until you hear a beep.

3-3. Using the audio system

Slow playback

Touch **⏸** and then touch **⏩**. Video is played slowly while you are touching **⏩**.

Searching a desired screen

■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch **Search** in the control icons.



Input the desired title number and then touch **Enter**.

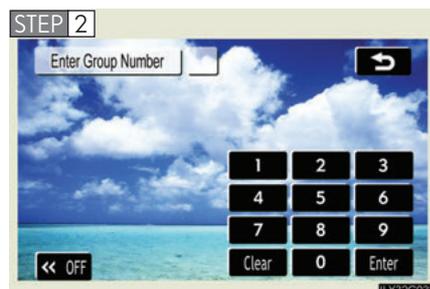
Clear: deletes the last input number.

<< OFF: hides the icons. To display the icons, touch **>> ON**.

↶: returns to previous screen.

■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch **Search** in the control icons.



Input the group number and then touch **Enter**.

Clear: deletes the last input number.

<< OFF: hides the icons. To display the icons, touch **>> ON**.

↶: returns to previous screen.

■ **Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)**

STEP 1 Touch **Search** in the control icons.



Input the desired bonus group number on the group search screen and touch **Enter**.

: deletes the number.

: returns to previous screen.

■ **Searching by chapter/track**

Press \wedge or \vee on to select a chapter/track.

■ **Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)**

STEP 1 Touch **Select Number** in the control icons.



Input the desired menu number on the screen and touch **Enter**.

3-3. Using the audio system

Using the DVD menu

STEP 1 Touch **Menu** or **Top Menu** in the control icons.

Touch  if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

STEP 2



Touch , ,  or  to select a menu item, then touch **Enter** to select.

 **Move Buttons** : moves icons up or down.

 **OFF** : hides icons. To display icons, touch  **ON** .

 : returns to previous screen.

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

Changing the subtitle language



Touch **Subtitle** in the control icons.

Each time you touch the button, the next available language is selected.

 **Hide** : hides the control icons.

 : returns to previous screen.

Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

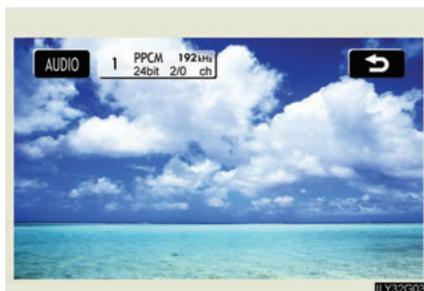


Touch **AUDIO** in the control icons.

Each time you touch the button, the next available language is selected.

 : returns to previous screen.

Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)



Touch **AUDIO** in the control icons.

Each time you touch the button, the next available audio format is selected.

 : returns to previous screen.

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Touch **Angle** in the control icons.



Touch the **Angle** button.

Each time you touch the button, the next available angle is selected.

 : returns to previous screen.

3-3. Using the audio system

Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

STEP 1 Touch **Setup** in the control icons.

STEP 2



After you change the initial settings, touch **Enter**.

Default: restores default settings.

■ Setting audio language

STEP 1 Touch **Audio Language**.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 243)

↶: returns to previous screen.

■ Setting subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch **Subtitle Language**.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 243)

↶: returns to previous screen.

■ Setting menu language

STEP 1 Touch **DVD Language**.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 243)

↶: returns to previous screen.

■ **Setting angle mark ON or OFF**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

Touch . Each time you touch the button, the multi angle mark on the screen turns on or off alternately.

■ **Parental lock**

STEP 1 Touch .



Input the 4-digit password and then touch .

If you enter wrong numbers, touch  to delete the numbers.

Touch  10 times to initialize the personal code.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8).

: returns to previous screen.

■ **Entering a language code**

If you touch  on the “Select Audio Language” screen, “Select Subtitle Language” screen or “Select DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.



Input the 4-digit language code and then touch .

: deletes the last input digit.

: returns to previous screen.

3-3. Using the audio system

● Language code

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1001	Japanese	0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1009	Yiddish
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1023	Javanese
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1101	Georgian
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1111	Kazakh
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1112	Greenlandic
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1113	Cambodian
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1114	Kannada

3-3. Using the audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto- Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo- Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

3-3. Using the audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

■ Error messages

If "Region Code Error" is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 220

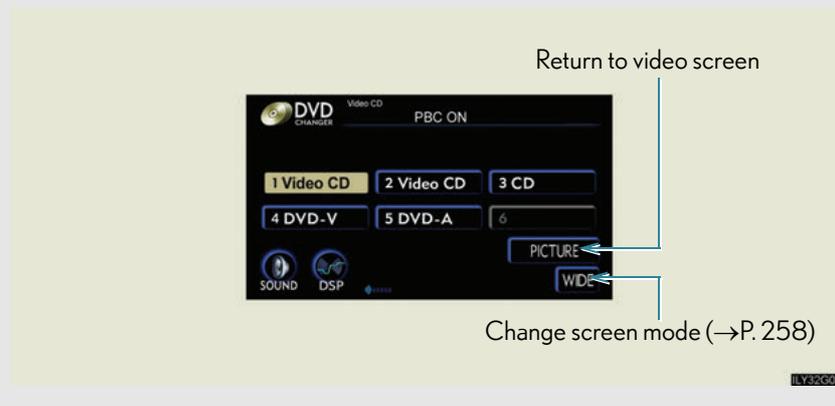
3-3. Using the audio system

Playing video CD

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the power switch in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

■ Video control screen

Press  while the disc is playing, the following screen appears.



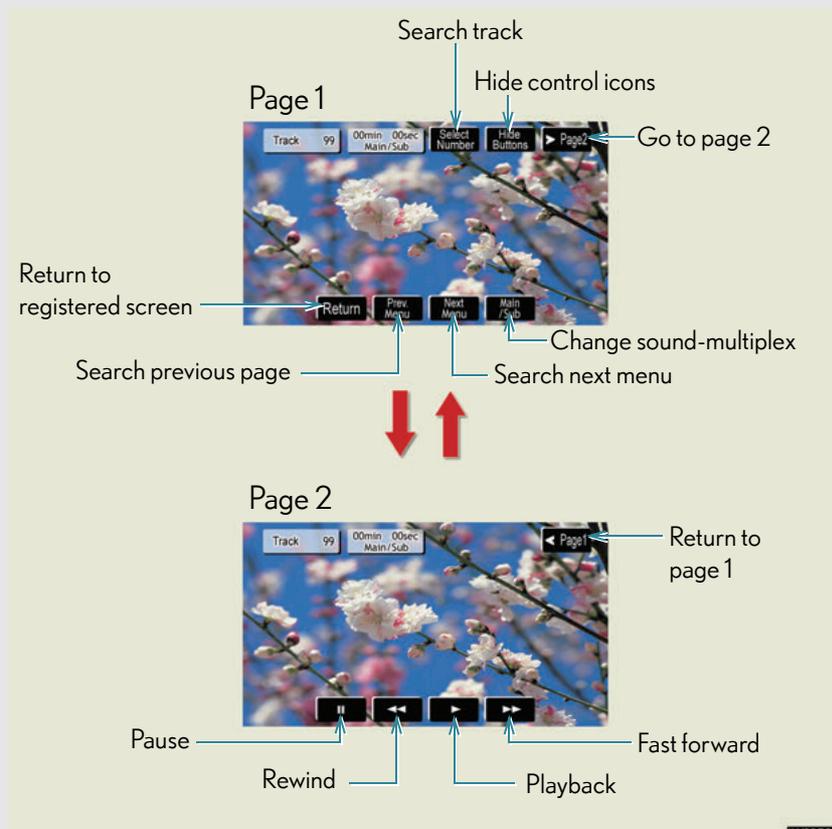
3

Interior features

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, the following screen appears.



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Fast forwarding/rewinding the video CD

Touch and hold  or  in the control icons or press and hold \wedge or \vee on  until you hear a beep.

Slow playback

Touch  and then touch  in the control icons. Video is played slowly while you are touching .

Using the video CD menu

Touch  in the control icons.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

3-3. Using the audio system

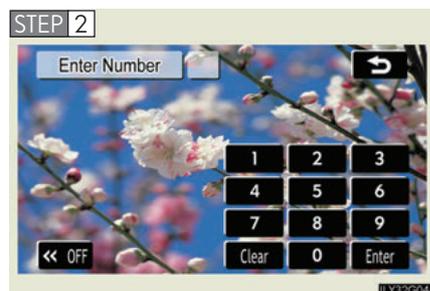
Selecting a desired screen

■ Searching manually

Touch **Prev. Menu** or **Next Menu** on the screen, or press \wedge or \vee on  until the desired screen appears.

■ Searching by number

STEP 1 Touch **Select Number** in the control icons.



Input the desired track number on the screen and touch **Enter**.

Clear: deletes the last input number.

<< OFF: hides icons. To display icons, touch **>> ON**.

↶: returns to previous screen.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch **Main/Sub** of the control icons. The mode cycles through each time the button is touched.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



■ Error messages

If “Region Code Error” is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 220

3-3. Using the audio system

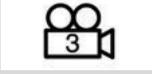
DVD player and DVD video disc information

■ DVD video discs

The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.

Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as "ALL" or "1", you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, "Region Code Error" appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Mark	Meaning
	Indicates NTSC format.
	Indicates the number of audio tracks.
	Indicates the number of language subtitles.
	Indicates the number of angles.
	Indicates the screen display ratios available. Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code. ALL: in all countries Number: region code

3-3. Using the audio system

■ DVD compatibility



Use only discs marked as shown to the left. The following products may not be playable on your DVD player.

- SACDs
- dts-CDs
- Copy-protected CDs
- DVD-Rs
- DVD+Rs
- DVD-RWs
- DVD+RWs
- DVD-ROMs
- DVD-RAMs

■ DVD video disc information

● DVD video discs

Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoding technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- **Viewer restrictions**

This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- **Multi-angle option**

You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- **Multi-language option**

You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- **Region codes**

The region codes are found on DVD players and DVD discs. If a DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on that DVD player. (→P. 251)
- **Audio**

This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVD. Other decoded types cannot be played.
- **Title and chapter**

Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

3-3. Using the audio system

■ Sound

● Dolby Digital

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

“Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.

©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U. S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.

Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

● DTS

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

■ Unsuitable discs, and player precautions

→P. 222

CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

3-3. Using the audio system

Optimal use of the audio/video system

Press  on the panel to display the audio/video control screen.

▶ Operating the radio, cassette player and CD player



▶ Operating the DVD video/audio and video CD



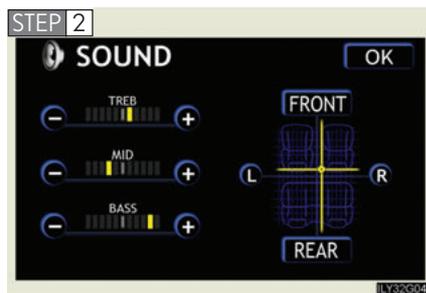
3

Interior features

3-3. Using the audio system

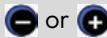
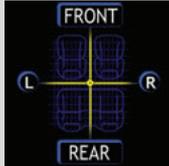
Adjusting sound quality and balance

STEP 1 Touch  on the screen.



Adjust the settings, referring to the following table.

Once you have finished, touch .

Sound quality mode	Display	Level	Touch
High-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Mid-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Low-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Front/rear volume balance		F7 to R7	
Left/right volume balance		L7 to R7	

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each radio, cassette tape, CD or DVD mode.

Setting DSP

The following features can be set as desired by touching  on the screen.



■ Turning Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) ON or OFF

Touch  or .

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

■ Changing the listening position (vehicles with CD player only)

The speaker balance can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

Touch .

The listening position changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

Display	Listening position
	Position best suited to the driver's seat
	Position best suited to the driver's and front passenger's seat

3-3. Using the audio system

Display	Listening position
	Position best suited to the rear seats
	Position best suited to all seats

■ Turning the surround ON or OFF (with DVD player only)

Touch **ON** or **OFF**.

Setting the screen ratio mode (with DVD player only)

STEP 1 Touch **WIDE** on the screen.



Touch one of the **NORMAL**, **WIDE1** or **WIDE2** to match screen ratio printed on the DVD.

Screen ratio mode	Details
NORMAL	Suitable for 4:3 screen ratio
WIDE1	Expand the Normal screen horizontally to fill the display.
WIDE2	Suitable for 16:9 screen ratio

3-3. Using the audio system

Using the steering switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the steering switches.



- 1** Power on, select audio source
- 2** Volume
- 3** Radio: Select radio stations
Cassette: Fast forward, rewind and selecting tracks
CD: Select tracks, discs and folder
DVD: Select tracks, discs and chapter

3

Interior features

Turning on the power

Press **MODE** when the audio system is off.

The audio system can be turned OFF by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

Changing the audio source

Press **MODE** when the audio system is on. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If a cassette tape or CD is not inserted, that mode will be skipped.

FM (1, 2) → cassette player → CD/DVD player → AM → SAT (1, 2, 3)

Adjusting the volume

Press "+" on  to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold down the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

3-3. Using the audio system

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press  to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press \wedge or \vee on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold the switch until you hear a beep.

Fast forwarding or rewinding the cassette

STEP 1 Press  to select the cassette mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold \wedge or \vee on  until you hear a beep.

To stop fast forwarding or rewinding, press the same switch.

Selecting a track or chapter (DVD mode only for chapter selection)

STEP 1 Press  to select the cassette mode, CD or DVD mode.

STEP 2 Press \wedge or \vee on  to select the desired track or chapter.

Cassette mode only: you can skip maximum 9 tracks.

Selecting a disc or folder in the CD or DVD player (Folder selection is available only when MP3/WMA disc is in use.)

STEP 1 Press  to select the CD or DVD player.

STEP 2 Press and hold \wedge or \vee on  until you hear a beep.

■ Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Push the same switch.

CAUTION

■ To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

Hands-free system

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth[®] mobile phones. Bluetooth[®] is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.

► Telephone switch



- 1 Sending/Receiving/"Telephone" screen display (when stopped)
- 2 End call

► Microphone



The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver's side speaker.

To use the hands-free system you must register your Bluetooth[®] phone in the system. (→P. 265)

3-4. Using the hands-free system

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the “Telephone” screen.



- 1 Connection status
- 2 Battery charge
- 3 Call area
- 4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad  : Not connected
Battery charge	 : Full  : Low
Call area	“Rm”: Roaming area “Hm”: Home area
Signal strength	 : Good  : Bad  : Not connected

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time it may be difficult to hear.
- If the received call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances it may be difficult to hear the other party.
 - When driving on unsealed roads
 - When driving at high speeds
 - If the window is open
 - If the air-conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
 - If the air-conditioning is set to high

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®.
- If the mobile phone is switched off.
- If you are outside service range.
- If the mobile phone is not connected.
- If the mobile phone's battery is low.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the display. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/Signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ Compatible models

Compatible with HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 and OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1.

■ Certification for the hands-free system

FCC ID: HYQBT0501A IC ID: 1551A-BT0501A
--

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION

■ FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This device is approved for Mobile Application only and, to comply with applicable FCC radio frequency exposure regulations, must be used with a distance of at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) between the antenna and the body of any person at all time during use.

■ Caution while driving

Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth[®] system.

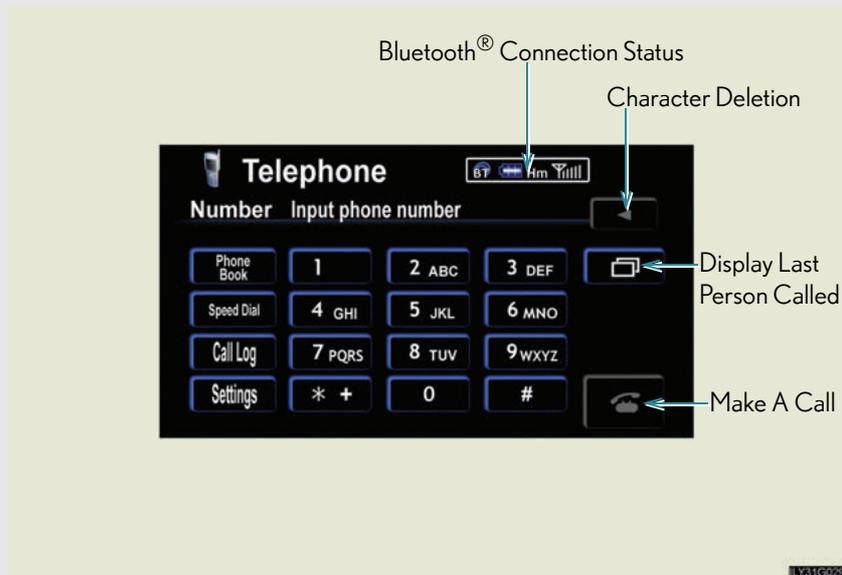
NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

3-4. Using the hands-free system Using the Bluetooth® phone

► Telephone screen



To display the screen shown above, press , then touch  on the "Information" screen.

3

Interior features

Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 6 phones in the system.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

3-4. Using the hands-free system



Touch .



Touch .



Input the passkey displayed on screen into your phone.

If the message "Bluetooth* connection successful" is displayed, registration is complete.

If the message "Bluetooth* connection failed. Please check the "Passkey" and the settings of the telephone" is displayed, start again from the beginning.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available—automatic and manual.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Choose one of the following methods.



1 Automatic connection

If the power switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode, the system will automatically connect to the Bluetooth® phone. Touching automatic connection will turn it ON/OFF.

2 Manual connection

If automatic connection fails or is turned OFF, connection must be made manually.

If the message “Bluetooth* connection successful” is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the power switch in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect. If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, connection must be made manually, or the phone must be re-selected.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

Making a call

Once the Bluetooth[®] phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure.

Dialing

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.



Inputting the phone number.

To delete the input phone number, touch .

To dial the last input phone number, touch .

STEP 4 Touch  or press the  on the steering wheel.

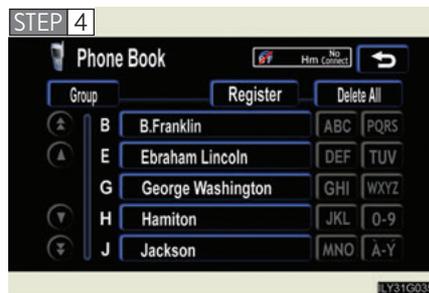
■ **Dialing from the phone book**

You can dial a number from the phone book data imported from your mobile phone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in the phone book. (→P. 287)

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.



Choose the data to call from the list.



Choose the number and then touch  or press the  on the steering wheel.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ Dialing from history

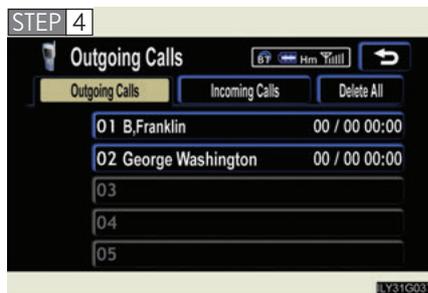
You can make a call from past dialed numbers or received calls.

Up to 5 numbers are stored, with the last recent number being deleted to make room for a new number.

STEP 1 Press .

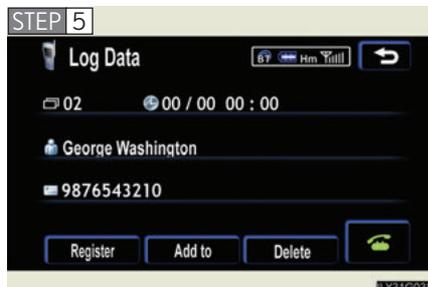
STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.



Choose the number to call from the list.

To choose a number from the incoming calls history, touch  and choose a number to call.



Touch  or press the  on the steering wheel.

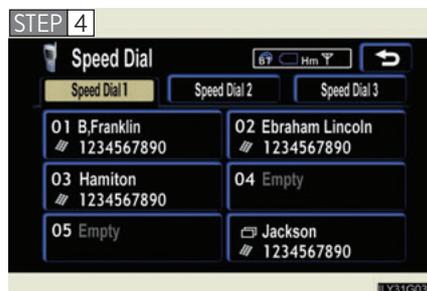
■ **Calling using speed dial**

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phone book and call history. (→P. 279)

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.



Choose the desired number to make a call.

To change the page, touch  or .

3

Interior features

3-4. Using the hands-free system

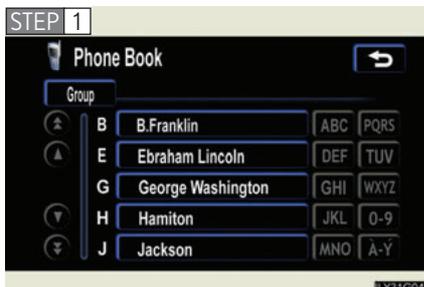
■ Calling using voice recognition

Using voice recognition, you can call by name from the “Phone Book” screen, call by number from the “Telephone” screen, and send tones from the “Call” screen. (→P. 276)

▶ Talk switch



● Calling by name from the “Phone Book” screen



Press the talk switch.

STEP 1 Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say the desired name.

If there are multiple entries for the same name, “Next” will be displayed.

To select the next candidate, touch **Next** or say “Next candidate”.

STEP 2 Following the system guidance, press the talk switch.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say “Dial”.

● Calling by number from the “Telephone” screen



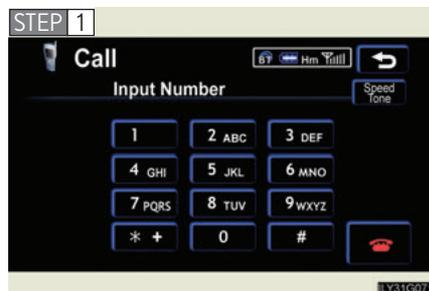
Press the talk switch.

STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say the desired number.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, press the talk switch.

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say “Dial”.

● Sending tones from the “Call” screen



Press the talk switch.

STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say the desired number.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, press the talk switch.

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say “Yes”.

■ Calling using POI

You can make a call using a Point Of Interest. (→“Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ Made/Received call history list

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the made calls history.
-  is displayed to the left of phone number for unanswered calls.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

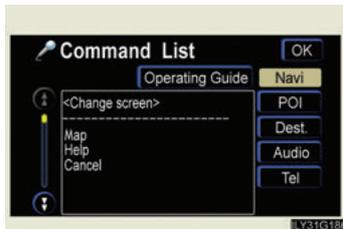
■ When driving

- The functions “Dialing”, “Dialing from the phone book”, and “Dialing from history” are unavailable.
- If you press the  on the steering wheel, the “Speed Dial” screen is displayed. At this time phone numbers will not be displayed. Choose from the names displayed to make a call.

■ International calls

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

■ To display the voice recognition command list

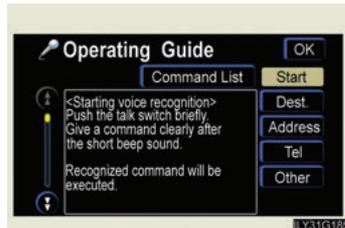


STEP 1 After pressing the talk switch, press . If the “Operating Guide” screen is displaying, press .

STEP 2 Press .

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ To display the voice recognition operating guide



STEP 1 After pressing the talk switch, press **Help**. If the “Command List” screen is displaying, press **Operating Guide**.

STEP 2 Press **Tel**.

■ To cancel voice recognition

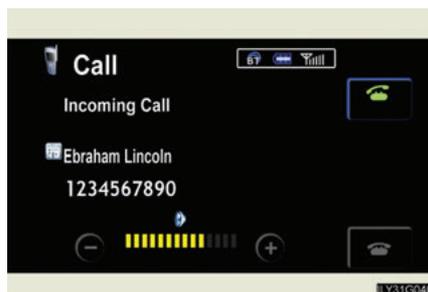
- Press and hold the talk switch.
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- Say “Cancel”.
- Press **Cancel** (excluding command verification)

■ When using voice recognition

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch  or press the  on the steering wheel.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ To refuse a call

Touch and hold .

■ To adjust the received call volume

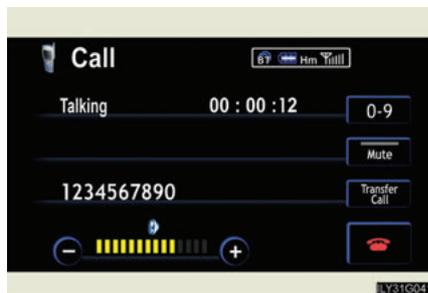
Press the  or . You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

■ International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly, depending on the mobile phone in use.

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



■ To adjust the received call volume

Press the  or . You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

■ To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

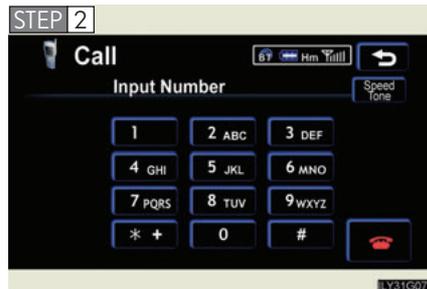
Touch .

■ Inputting a key

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phone book.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

STEP 1 Touch **0-9**.



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phone book, **Send** and **Exit** are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133p0123w#1*)

STEP 3 Confirm the number displayed on screen, and touch **Send**.
If you touch **Exit**, operation is completed without making a call.

■ To transfer a call

Touch **Transfer Call**.

■ To hang up

Touch  or press the  on the steering wheel.

■ Transferring calls

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

■ To send a tone by speed tone

Touch **0-9** then touch **Speed Tone**. Choose the desired number from the speed tone list displayed.

■ While driving

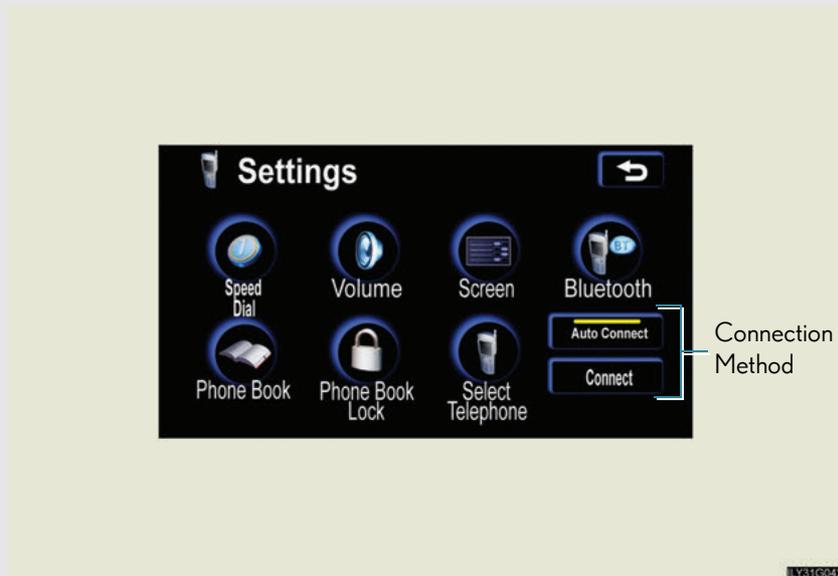
Key input is unavailable.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

Setting the hands-free system

You can speed dial, register in and edit the phone book, and set the Bluetooth® phone.

► Settings screen



To display the screen shown above, press , touch  on the “Information” screen, then touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

Registering/Deleting a speed dial item

■ **Registering a speed dial item**

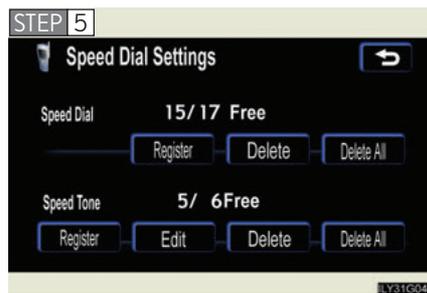
You can register a number from the phone book or the call history. Up to 17 entries may be stored.

STEP 1 Press .

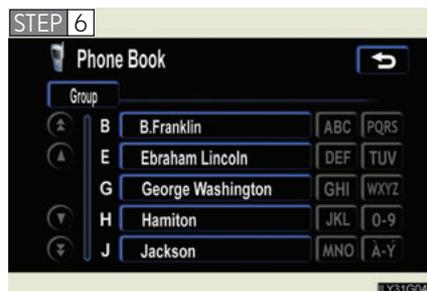
STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.



Touch  in the "Speed Dial" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

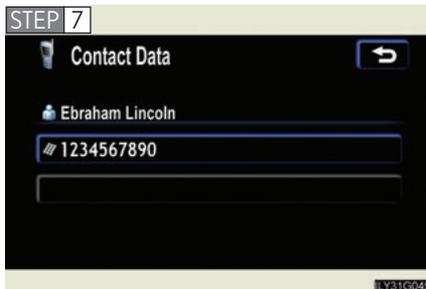


Select the data to be registered.

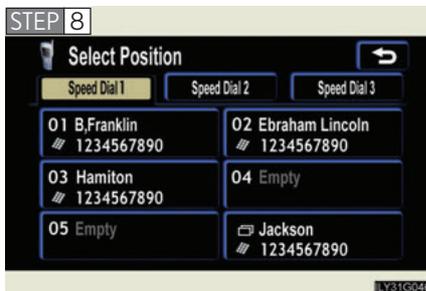
3

Interior features

3-4. Using the hands-free system



Select the number to be registered.



Press the desired switch.

The last dialed number will be registered in position 6.

■ Deleting a speed dial item

STEP 1 Press .

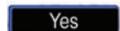
STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the "Speed Dial" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

STEP 6 Select the data to be deleted.

STEP 7 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

■ **To delete all speed dial items**

Follow the steps for “Deleting a speed dial item” to “STEP 5”. In the “Speed Dial” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen, touch the . A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

Registering/Editing/Deleting a Speed Tone

■ **Registering a speed tone**

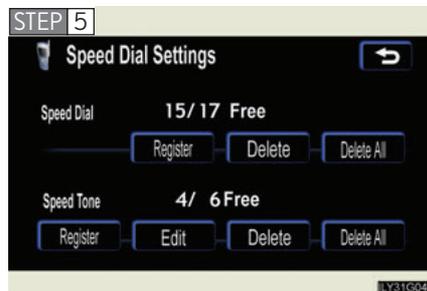
You can register up to 6 items.

STEP 1 Press .

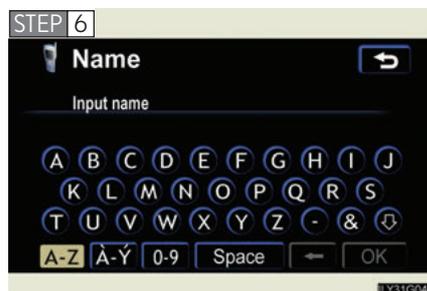
STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  in the “Speed Tone” section.



Input the desired name and touch

.

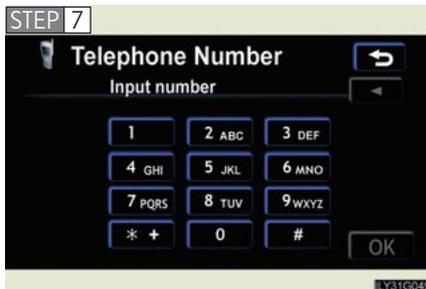
, : Letter input

: Number/Symbol input

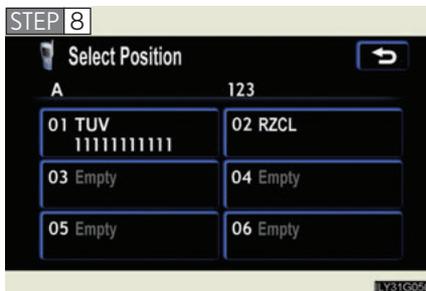
: Space

: Backspace

3-4. Using the hands-free system



Input the number and touch **OK**.



Touch the desired switch.

■ Editing a speed tone

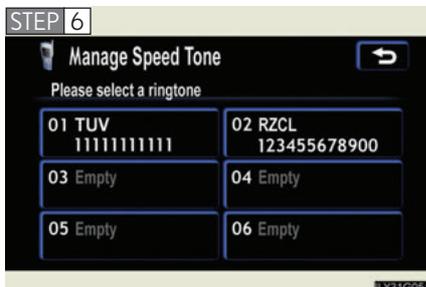
STEP 1 Press **INFO**.

STEP 2 Touch **Telephone** on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch **Settings** on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch **Speed Tone** on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch **Edit** in the "Speed Tone" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.



Touch the switch to be edited.

STEP 7 Input the name and touch **OK**.

STEP 8 Input the number and touch **OK**.

■ Deleting a speed tone

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch **Settings** on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch **Delete** in the "Speed Tone" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

STEP 6 Choose the data to delete.

STEP 7 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

■ To delete all speed tone data

Follow the steps "Deleting a speed tone" to "STEP 5". In the "Speed Tone" section, touch **Delete All**. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

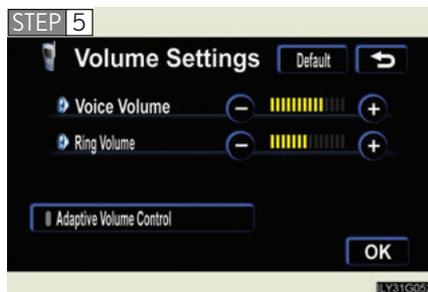
Setting the volume

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.



Touch  or  to lower or raise the volume.

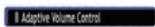
Voice Volume: Change the speaker volume

Ring Volume: Change the ring volume

Adaptive Volume Control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or over, the system automatically raises the volume one level.

If the vehicle's speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h), the volume will return to its original level.

You can turn this function ON/OFF by touching .

To return to the default volume settings

Touch , then .

Changing the screen settings

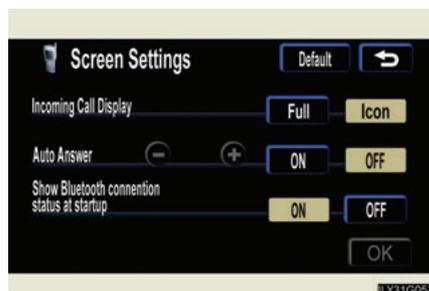
STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

The following settings can be changed.



"Incoming Call Display"

The incoming call screen settings can be changed.

"Auto Answer"

When a call is received, the system automatically switches to the talking screen after the set period of time, meaning you can speak without pressing anything.

"Show Bluetooth* connection status at startup"

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ “Incoming Call Display” settings

Select the desired switch.

Full : The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

Icon : A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

■ “Auto Answer” settings

STEP 1 Touch **ON** in the “Auto Answer” section of the “Screen Settings” screen.

STEP 2 Set the wait time using **−** and **+**. (1 - 60 seconds)

■ “Show Bluetooth* connection status at startup” settings

Touch **ON** / **OFF**.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ To set the screen settings to default

Touch **Default**, then **Yes**.

Phone book settings

Up to 1000 names, 2 items per name, can be registered.

■ Transferring mobile phone data

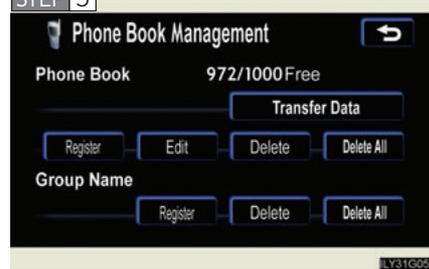
STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch .

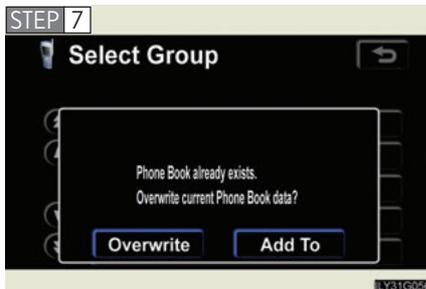


STEP 6



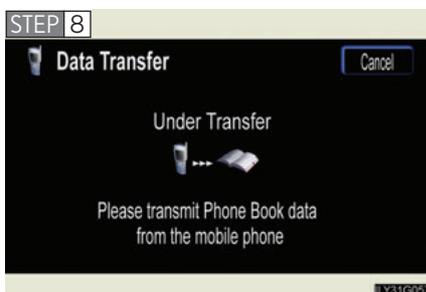
Select the group to transfer to.

3-4. Using the hands-free system



To overwrite data, touch **Overwrite**.

To add to existing data, touch **Add To**.



Transfer will begin. If you wish to cancel the transfer before finished, touch **Cancel**.

Transfer is complete when "Transfer completed" is displayed.

If "Transfer failed" is displayed, restart the process from the beginning.

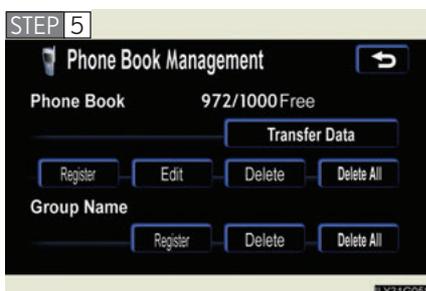
■ Registering by input

STEP 1 Press **INFO**.

STEP 2 Touch **Telephone** on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch **Settings** on the "Telephone" screen.

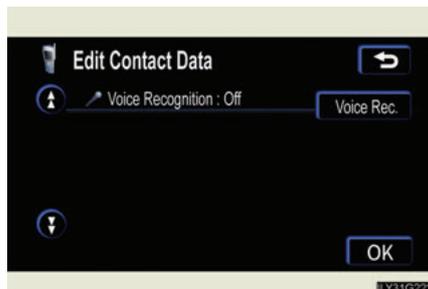
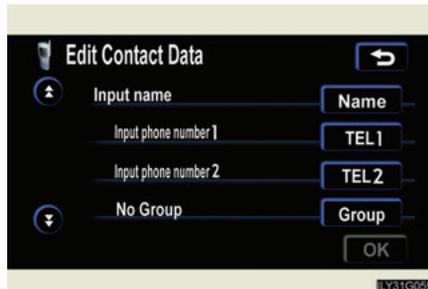
STEP 4 Touch **Phone Book** on the "Settings" screen.



Touch the **Register** in the "Phone Book" section.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

STEP 6 Choose the switch to register.



Name : Input the name on the "Name" screen.

TEL1 , **TEL2** : Input the number(s) on the "Telephone Number" screen. When you touch **OK** , the "Select Icon" screen will appear. Choose the desired icon.

- Mobile phone1
- Mobile phone2
- Home
- Work
- Other

Group : Select the desired group from the "Select Group" screen. (No Group, 01 - 09)

Voice Rec. : Select the desired phone number and touch **REC** to record a voice tag. To play the voice tag, touch **PLAY** . To delete the voice tag, touch **Delete** .

STEP 7 Once input is complete, touch **OK** .

3

Interior features

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ Add history data to a registered entry

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Choose the desired number from the list.

To choose from the received call history, touch  then select the desired number.

STEP 5 Touch .



The screenshot shows a "Log Data" screen with the following details: a status bar at the top with "69", "Hm", and "Full"; a call duration of "00 / 00 00 : 00"; the name "George Washington"; and the phone number "9876543210". At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Register", "Add to", and "Delete", along with a telephone handset icon.

STEP 6 Choose the phone book entry to be added to.

STEP 7 Check the data to be added, then touch .

■ Editing phone book data

- STEP 1** Press .
- STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.
- STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.
- STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.
- STEP 5** Touch  in the "Phone Book" section of the "Phone Book Management" screen.
- STEP 6** Choose the data to edit.
- STEP 7** Choose the switch to edit.
- STEP 8** After editing, touch .

■ Deleting phone book data

- STEP 1** Press .
- STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.
- STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.
- STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.
- STEP 5** Touch  in the "Phone Book" section of the "Phone Book Management" screen.
- STEP 6** Select the data to delete.
- STEP 7** A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ To delete all data

Follow the steps “Deleting phone book data” to “STEP 5”. In the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen, touch **Delete All**. To delete all data within a group, touch **Group Data**, then select the group to delete. To delete all contact data, touch **All Contact Data**. Check that everything is correct, then touch **Yes**.

■ Registering/Editing/Deleting from the phone book

You can register data in the phone book, edit registered data, and delete items.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 To register data, touch **Register** on the “Phone Book” screen.

To delete all data, touch **Delete All**.

To delete or edit specific data, select the data to delete/edit, then touch

Delete to delete, or **Edit** to edit.

■ The phone book

The method for transferring phone book data from the phone to the system varies with phone model. See the phone’s manual.

Changing the phone book group name settings

■ **Registering a group name**

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch the  switch in the "Group Name" section of the "Phone Book Management" screen.

STEP 6 Select the group to register ("01" - "19").



Select the switch to be edited.

Icon : The below screen will be displayed. Select the desired icon.

Name : Input the name on the "Name" screen.



STEP 8 Once editing is complete, touch .

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ Deleting a group name

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the "Group Name" section of the "Phone Book Management" screen.

STEP 6 Select the group name to delete.

STEP 7 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

■ To delete all data

Follow the steps "Deleting phone book data" procedure to "STEP 5". In the "Phone Book" section of the "Phone Book Management" screen, touch . A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

Deleting the history

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Select the data to delete from the list.

To delete data from the received calls history, touch , then select the data to delete.

STEP 5 Touch .



STEP 6 Check that everything is correct, then touch .

■ To delete all data

Follow the steps "Deleting a group name" to "STEP 4". Touch  on the "Outgoing Calls" screen. To delete all received call history data, touch , then touch . Check that everything is correct, then touch .

Changing the security settings

You can disable certain hands-free system functions. Use the security settings when you do not wish other people to see the registered data, for example when having the vehicle valet parked at a hotel.

To enable or disable security, the security code (4 digits) is required. The default code is "0000". Be sure to change the security code before use.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

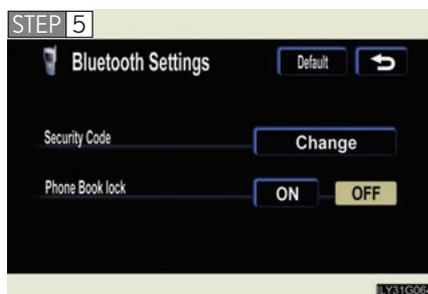
■ Changing the security code

STEP 1 Press .

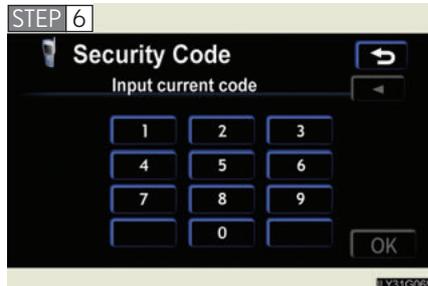
STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  in the “Security Code” section.



Input the current security code, and touch .

STEP 7 Input the new security code, and touch .

STEP 8 A confirmation message will appear. If everything is correct, touch .

■ Enabling security

- STEP 1** Press .
- STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.
- STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.
- STEP 5** Touch  in the “Phone Book Lock” section of the “Phone Book Lock” screen.
- STEP 6** Input the security code, and touch .

■ Setting the security code to default

- STEP 1** Press .
- STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.
- STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.
- STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.
- STEP 5** Touch  on the “Phone Book Lock” screen.
- STEP 6** Input the security code on the “Security Code” screen, then touch .
- STEP 7** A confirmation message will appear. If everything is correct, touch .

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ If the “Phone Book Lock” is set

If the security code is input and the “Phone Book Lock” set, the following functions are locked.

- Display of the phone book screen and transferring, registering, editing, deleting the phone book data.
- Display of speed dial screen, registering, deleting the speed dial and speed dialing.
- Display of the other party's name for calls being received or made.
- Display of dialed numbers screen and received calls screen, deleting dialed numbers and received numbers.
- Display of phone information screen.
- Changing the security code.

The speed dial screen is not displayed while driving.

■ When changing the security code

- Be sure to choose a number difficult for strangers to guess.
- Do not forget the security code. Even your Lexus dealer will be unable to disable the security. If you do forget the code, initialize all personal data. (→P. 190)

Setting a Bluetooth® phone

■ Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the below procedure to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch **Settings** on the “Telephone” screen.



Touch .



Select the phone to be use, then touch **OK**.

If no phones are registered, “Empty” will be displayed.

If “Bluetooth* connection successful” is displayed, registration was successful.

If another Bluetooth® phone is already connected, a confirmation message is displayed. Touch **Yes** or **No**.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ Displaying Bluetooth® information

You can check the device address and device name.

STEP 1 Press .

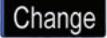
STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 On the “Select Telephone” screen, select the desired phone and touch .



To change the device name, touch  in the “Device Name” section, and input the name on the “Name” screen (max. 20 characters).

■ To change the Bluetooth® settings

You can change the device name and passkey.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



To change the device name, touch **Change** in the “Device Name” section, and input the name on the “Name” screen (max. 20 characters).

To change the passkey, touch **Change** in the “Passkey” section, and input 4 - 8 digits on the “Passkey” screen.

■ Setting the Bluetooth® settings to default

STEP 1 Press **INFO**.

STEP 2 Touch **Telephone** on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch **Settings** on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch **Bluetooth** on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Touch **Default** on the “Bluetooth* Settings” screen.

STEP 6 A confirmation message is displayed. If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

3-4. Using the hands-free system

■ To delete the Bluetooth® settings

STEP 1 Press .

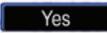
STEP 2 Touch  on the "Information" screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the "Bluetooth* Telephone" section of the "Bluetooth* Settings" screen.

STEP 6 On the "Delete Telephone" screen, select the phone to delete.
To check the device address, touch .

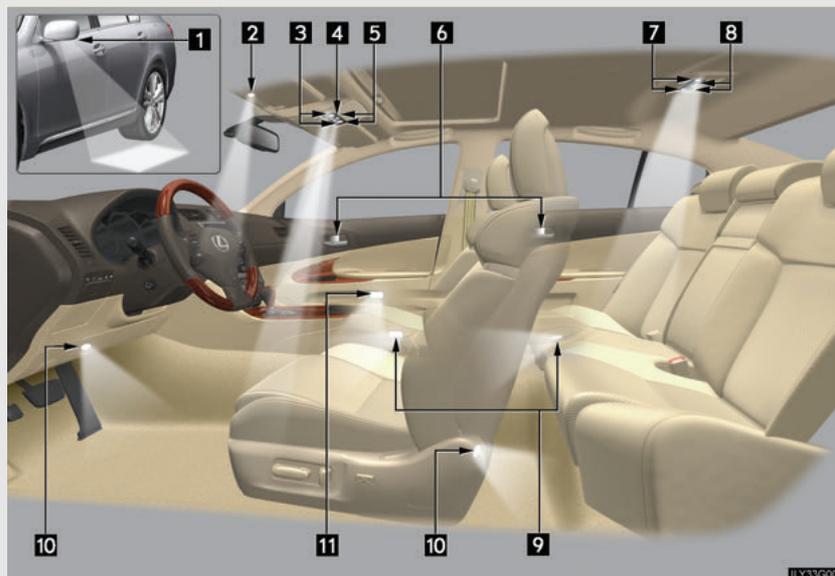
STEP 7 If you touch , a confirmation message is displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

3-5. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list

Illuminated entry system: The various lights automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are open/closed, and the power switch mode.



- 1 Outer foot light
- 2 Steering spot light
- 3 Front personal lights (→P. 305)
- 4 Shift lever light
- 5 Front interior lights (→P. 304)

3-5. Using the interior lights

- 6 Inside door handle lights
- 7 Rear personal lights (→P. 305)
- 8 Rear interior lights
- 9 Door courtesy lights
- 10 Foot light
- 11 Front scuff light

When the instrument panel light control switch is turned to minimum, the foot lights, inside door handle lights and shift lever light will turn off. (→P. 113)

■ To prevent 12 volt battery discharge

If the interior lights, personal lights and steering spot light remain ON when the door is not fully closed or the interior light switch in "DOOR" position, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ Customization

Setting (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (→P. 510)

Interior lights



- 1 "ON"
- 2 "OFF"
- 3 "DOOR"

The interior lights are turned on/off by the illuminated entry system.

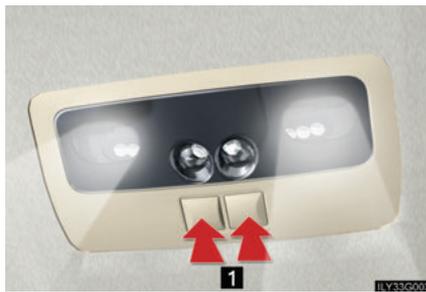
Personal lights

► Front



1 ON/OFF

► Rear



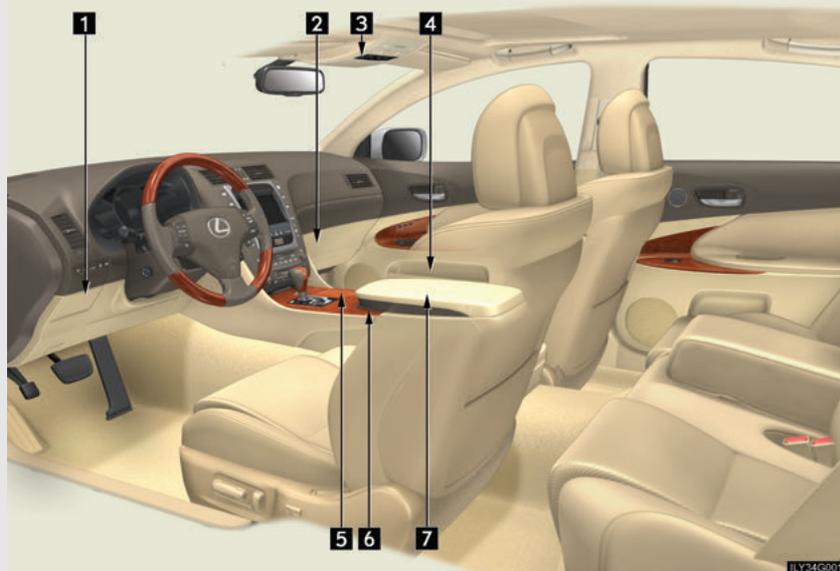
1 ON/OFF

■ Customization

Settings can be changed. (→P. 513)

3-6. Using the storage features

List of storage features



- 1 Storage compartment
- 2 Glove box
- 3 Overhead console
- 4 Door pocket
- 5 Cup holders
- 6 Coin holder
- 7 Console box

Glove box



- 1 Open (push button)
- 2 Lock with the mechanical key
- 3 Unlock with the mechanical key

■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the headlight switch is on.

■ Trunk opener main switch

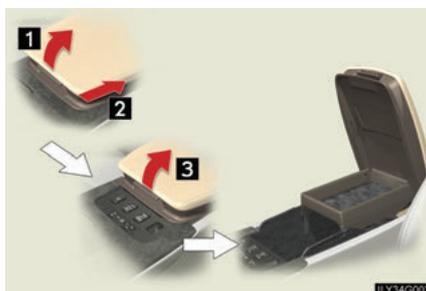
The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→ P. 30)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Console box



- 1 Pull up the lever to release the lock.
- 2 Slide armrest.
- 3 Lift the armrest to open.

3-6. Using the storage features

■ Console box light

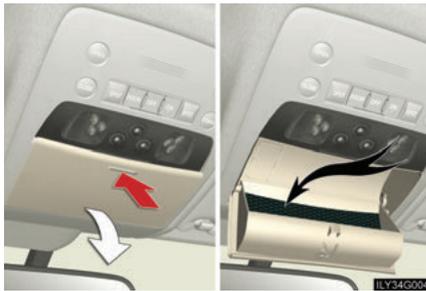
The console box light turn on when the headlight switch is on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Overhead console (if equipped)



The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

⚠ CAUTION

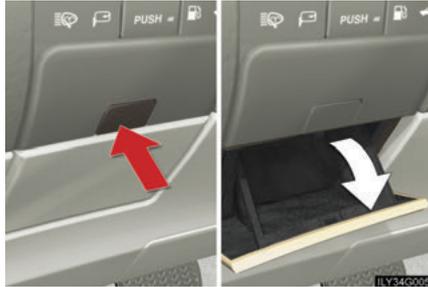
■ Items that should not be left in the overhead console

Do not leave glasses or lighters in the console.
If the interior of the vehicle becomes hot, lighters may explode and glasses may warp or become cracked.

■ Caution while driving

Do not leave the overhead console open. Items may fall out and cause injury.

Storage compartment



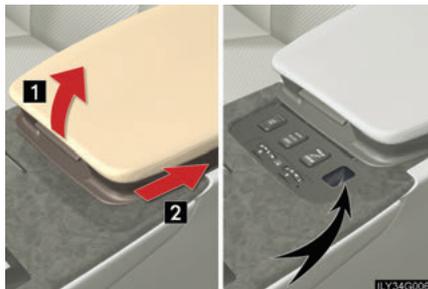
⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not leave the storage compartment open.

The opened compartment may hit your body or items may be thrown out of the compartment in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

Coin holder



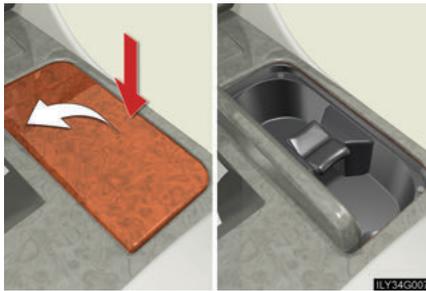
1 Pull up lever to release the lock.

2 Slide armrest.

3-6. Using the storage features

Cup holders

► Front



To open, press down and release the cup holder lid.

► Rear



To open, press in and release the rear cup holder on the armrest.

⚠ CAUTION

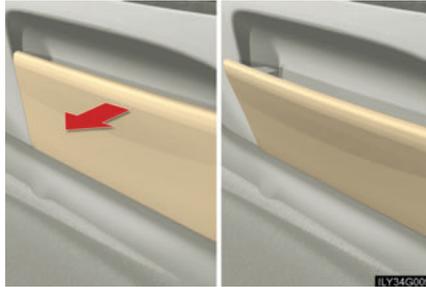
■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Door pockets



The door pocket can be opened and closed.

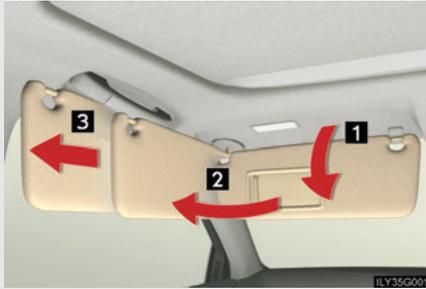
CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

3-7. Other interior features

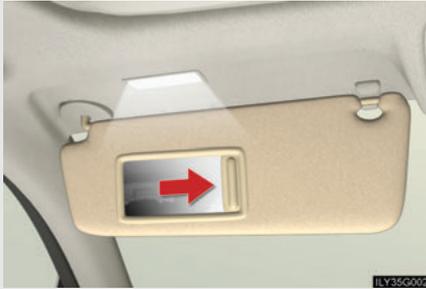
Sun visors



- 1 Forward position: Flip down.
- 2 Side position: Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.
- 3 Side extender: Place in side position, then slide backwards.

3-7. Other interior features

Vanity mirror



The light turns on when the cover is opened.

3-7. Other interior features

Clock



■ Adjust clock

With navigation system: → “Navigation System Owner's Manual”.

Without navigation system: Perform the following steps.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch .



- 1 Adjust hours.
 - 2 Adjust minutes.
 - 3 Round the nearest hour.
 - 4 Turn daylight saving time on.
 - 5 Turn daylight saving time off.
- After setting, touch .

■ The clock is displayed when

The power switch is in “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode.

■ When the 12 volt battery is disconnected

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

3-7. Other interior features

Outside temperature display

The displayed temperature ranges from -40°F (-40°C) up to 122°F (50°C).



- **The outside temperature is displayed when**

- The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

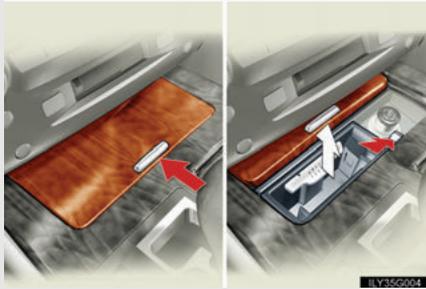
- **When --- is displayed**

- The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

3-7. Other interior features

Ashtrays

► Front

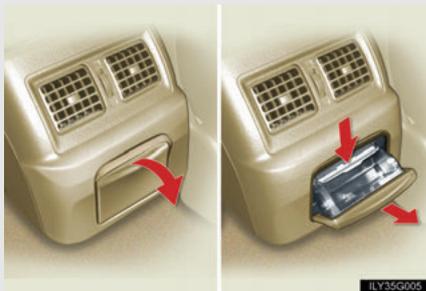


Slide the lid back to open.

Push the lever to remove the ashtray.

Push the lid to close.

► Rear



Pull the ashtray lid to open.

Hold the plate down and pull the ashtray upwards to remove.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

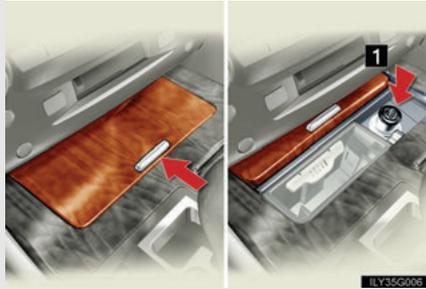
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

3-7. Other interior features

Cigarette lighter



- 1 Slide the lid back to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when ready for use.

- The cigarette lighter can be used when
The power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

CAUTION

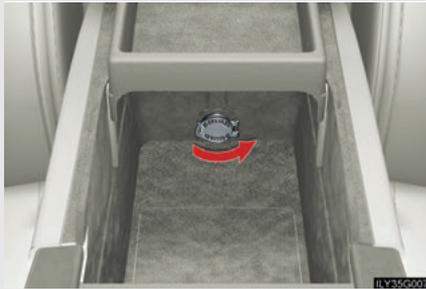
■ To avoid burns or fires

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

3-7. Other interior features

Power outlet

The power outlet can be used for 12V accessories that run on less than 10A.



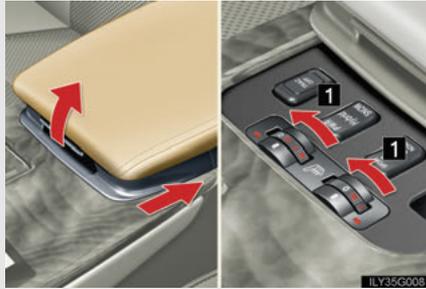
- The power outlet can be used when
The power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

NOTICE

- **To avoid damaging the power outlet**
Close the power outlet lid when not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.
- **To prevent the fuse from being blown**
Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12V/10A.
- **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**
Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

3-7. Other interior features

Seat heaters (if equipped)



1 Heats the seats

The indicator light comes on.
The higher the number, the warmer the seats become.

■ The seat heaters can be used when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ When not in use

Set the dial to "0". The indicator light turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
 - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
 - Persons with sensitive skin
 - Persons who are fatigued
 - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.

3-7. Other interior features

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent seat heater damage**

Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

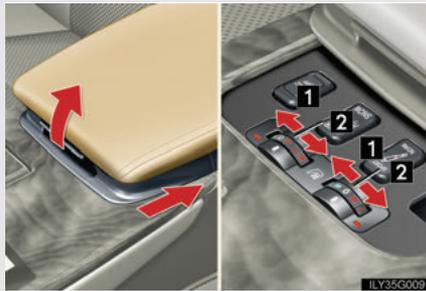
■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Turn the switches off when the hybrid system is off.

3-7. Other interior features

Seat heaters and ventilators (if equipped)

The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.



1 Heats the seats

The indicator light (red) comes on.
The higher the number, the warmer the seats become.

2 Blows air from the seats

The indicator light (green) comes on.
The higher the number, the stronger the airflow becomes.

■ The seat heaters and ventilators can be used when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ When not in use

Set the dial to "0". The indicator light turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
 - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
 - Persons with sensitive skin
 - Persons who are fatigued
 - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.

3-7. Other interior features

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent seat heater damage**

Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Turn the switches off when the hybrid system is off.

3-7. Other interior features

Armrest



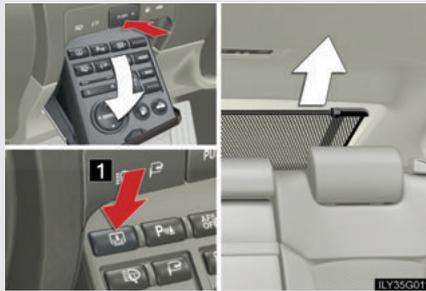
 NOTICE

- **To prevent damage to the armrest**
Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

3-7. Other interior features

Rear sunshade

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by pressing the switch shown below.



1 Raise/lower

■ The rear sunshade can be used when

The power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ Reverse operation feature

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to "R".

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- Shift the shift lever into "P".
- The switch is pressed again.
- The shift lever is shifted out of "R", and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h).

If the hybrid system is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the hybrid system is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). To raise the sunshade again, press the switch.

■ After the power switch is turned "OFF"

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered for approximately 1 minute.

 CAUTION

■ **When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered**

Do not place fingers or other objects in the fastener section or in the opening. They may get caught, causing injury.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the hybrid system is off.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the sunshade**

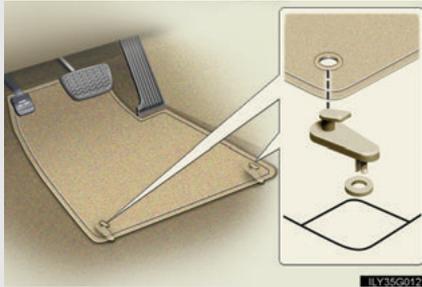
Observe the following precautions.

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously over long periods of time.

3-7. Other interior features

Floor mats

Securely place a mat that matches the size of the space on the carpet.



Secure the floor mat using the hooks provided.

CAUTION

■ When inserting the floor mat

Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the vehicle carpet. If the floor mat slips and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it may cause an accident.

3-7. Other interior features

Trunk features

■ Cargo hooks

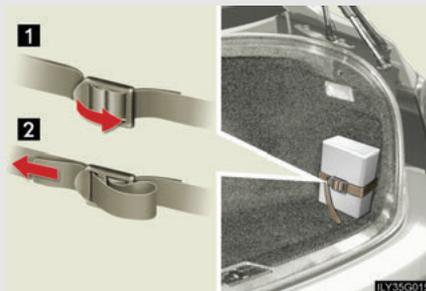


Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

■ Shopping bag hooks



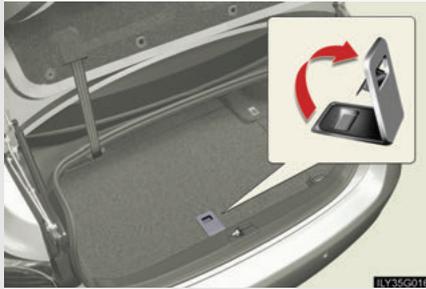
■ First-aid kit storage belt



- 1 Loosen
- 2 Tighten

3-7. Other interior features

■ Luggage mat



Pull the lever upwards when lifting the luggage mat up.



The lever can be hooked on the edge of the trunk.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When closing the trunk

Do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked on the edge of the trunk.
The luggage mat may get damaged.

3-7. Other interior features

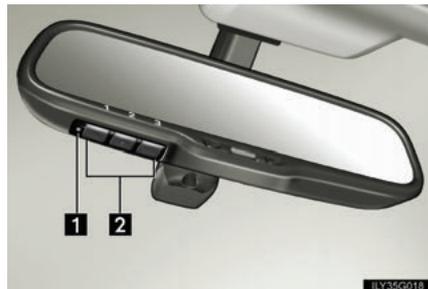
Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, and security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

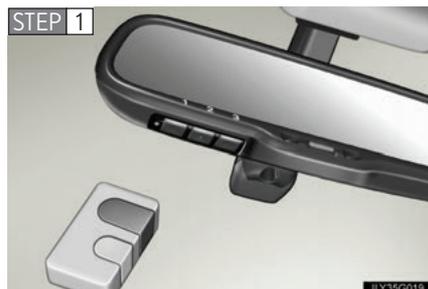
Programming the HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



- 1 Indicator
- 2 Buttons

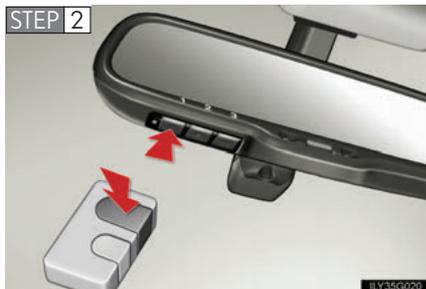
Programming the HomeLink®



Point the remote control for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® control buttons.

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink® in view while programming.

3-7. Other interior features



Press and hold down one of the buttons on the HomeLink[®] and the button on the transmitter. When the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] changes from a slow to a rapid flash after 20 seconds, you can release both buttons.



Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button.

If programming a garage door opener, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your garage transmitter is of the Rolling Code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink[®] button. The garage door has the rolling code feature if the indicator light (on the HomeLink[®]) flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is the Rolling Code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming the HomeLink[®]" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the training button.

STEP 2 Press the training button.

STEP 3 Press and release the vehicle's programmed HomeLink[®] button twice. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink[®] transceiver and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink[®].

Keep the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink[®] button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is complete.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink[®] compatible transceiver start to flashing rapidly, release the buttons.

3-7. Other interior features

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink[®] by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink[®] buttons.

■ Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ Reprogramming a button

The individual HomeLink[®] buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the “Basic programming” instructions.

Operating the HomeLink[®]

Press the appropriate HomeLink[®] button. The HomeLink[®] indicator light on the HomeLink[®] transceiver should turn on.

The HomeLink[®] continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Erasing the entire HomeLink[®] memory (all three programs)



Press and hold down the 2 outside buttons for 20 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink[®] memory.

■ **Before programming**

- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink®.

■ **Certification for the garage door opener**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

 **CAUTION**

■ **When programming a garage door or other remote control device**

The garage door may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ **Conforming to federal safety standards**

Do not use the HomeLink® Compatible Transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

3-7. Other interior features

Compass

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

■ Operation

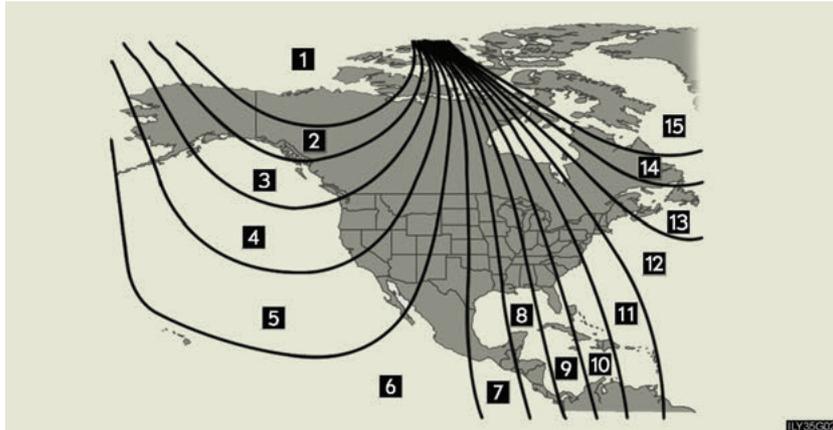


To turn the compass on or off, push "AUTO" for longer than 3 seconds.

■ Displays and directions

Display	Direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

Calibrating the compass



3

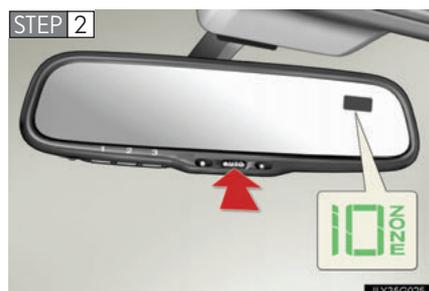
The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.

To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

Deviation calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.



Press "AUTO" until a number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

STEP 3 Press "AUTO", and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.

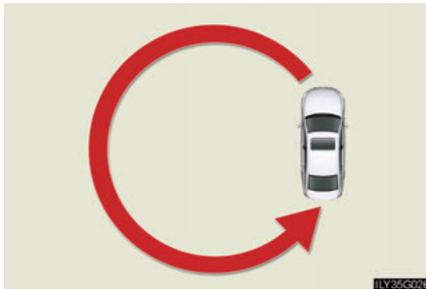
Interior features

3-7. Other interior features

STEP 4 Wait a few seconds until the compass direction is displayed.

The calibration is complete.

■ Circling calibration



If "CAL" appears on the display, drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

■ Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
(There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The 12 volt battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

 CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the display.
Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

■ **When doing the circling calibration**

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

 NOTICE

■ **To avoid the compass malfunctions**

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror.
Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the compass**

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

3-7. Other interior features

Lexus Link System (if equipped)

The Lexus Link System is a communication service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and cellular service to provide you with safety, security and convenience. This system is only operational in GPS and cellular coverage areas. Button operation and voice commands are used to operate the system. To operate the system, follow the voice guidance instructions. For details about service and subscription, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free).

■ Buttons



- 1 Voice keypad button
- 2 Volume control
- 3 Phone button
- 4 "SERVICES" button
- 5 Emergency button

■ Services

The Lexus Link System offers the following services.

- Airbag deployment notification (→P. 340)
- Emergency assistance (→P. 340)
- Stolen vehicle location assistance (→P. 341)
- Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock (→P. 341)
- Advisor record (→P. 342)
- Personal calling (→P. 342)
- Other services (→P. 341)

Operating the Lexus Link System during a Bluetooth® phone call will terminate the Bluetooth® phone call.

Safety information for the Lexus Link System

Important! Read this information before using the Lexus Link System.

■ Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Lexus Link System installed in your vehicle is a low power ratio transmitter and receiver. When the power switch is in the "IG-ON" mode, it receives and also sends radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of the Lexus Link System complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

3-7. Other interior features

Indicator and warning lights



1 Operation indicator light

If your subscription has expired, the operation indicator light will go off.

2 Warning light

If the warning light (red light) comes on, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Airbag deployment notification

If an airbag deploys, an emergency call is automatically placed to the Lexus Link Call Center, and your vehicle's location is identified. The Lexus Link Advisor will attempt to contact you and assess the situation. The Advisor can quickly contact the nearest emergency services provider, describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to your location.

The Lexus Link Advisor can, if requested, connect you to an emergency services operator.

Emergency assistance

When you press the  button, a priority call is placed to the Lexus Link Call Center with your vehicle's location. At the Call Center, the Lexus Link Advisor can determine your vehicle's location, communicate with you, and, if appropriate, contact the nearest emergency service provider.

If you have accidentally pressed the button, tell the Lexus Link Advisor that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Stolen vehicle location assistance

If your vehicle is stolen, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

To protect subscribers' privacy, the location of a vehicle will not be provided to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock

The remote operations are performed by contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle. When necessary, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

- In the case that you forget to lock the vehicle or you are locked out, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to lock or unlock the vehicle remotely.
- In the case that you forget where you parked the vehicle, such as in a large parking lot, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to flash the headlights and sound the horn to help you locate the vehicle.

When contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle, you need the Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number). Write the PIN down and carry it with you.

Other services

Press the  button in the vehicle or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free), and then select the option for Lexus Link. The services provided will depend on the service plan level.

3-7. Other interior features

Advisor record

■ Recording a conversation with an advisor

Press the  button to record a conversation. To stop recording, press the  button again.

- Up to 2 minutes of recording time is available.
- Recording a new conversation deletes the previously recorded conversation.

■ Playing the recorded conversation

STEP 1 Press the  or  button.

STEP 2 Say "Advisor playback".

Press the button again to stop the playback.

To restart the playback, press the  button, say "Advisor playback" and then select either of the following methods.

- Say "Resume" to resume the playback.
- Say "Play" to start from the beginning.

Personal calling

The hands-free personal calling feature can be added to the Lexus Link System as an option. You can purchase a package of minutes that works best for you. As you make and receive calls, minutes are deducted from your plan. They are easily billed to a credit card that is kept on file so no separate phone bill is needed.

Personal calling universal voice recognition commands:

- **"Help"** The system will provide a list of available commands.
- **"Clear"** When you are entering digits, this command will erase the last digit entered.
- **"Cancel"** This command takes you from the current function to the "Lexus Link ready" prompt. If the last response from the system was "Lexus Link ready", this command will exit voice mode.

Voice recognition error message:

- **“Pardon”** The system responds with this message if the system does not recognize your voice command properly. Say the command slowly again. After the third time this happens, the system will try to guess the command you are requesting. If correct, say “Yes”. If not, say “No”, and the system will prompt you with its next-best guess.
- **“Slower please”** The system responds with this message if you say a command before the system is ready to listen or if your voice command cannot be recognized because of substantial background noise. Try to wait slightly longer before speaking.

■ There are 5 ways to make a call.

▶ Dialing a specific number

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Dial”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Phone number to dial please”, say the entire number you wish to dial without pausing.

STEP 3 The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

STEP 4 Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

STEP 5 The system responds with “Dialing” (your call will then be connected).

▶ Dialing digit-by-digit (“Digit Dial”)

“Digit Dial” enables you to dial a phone number by individual digit. This is helpful when there is background noise and also improves voice recognition.

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Digit dial”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Digit please”, say the first digit of the number to be dialed and wait for it to be repeated back to you.

STEP 3 Continue one digit at a time until all digits are entered.

3-7. Other interior features

STEP 4 When finished, say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dialing” and your call is placed.

If you have problems storing a number using the continuous number method, you can store numbers one digit at a time using “Digit Store”. Simply follow the instructions above for “Digit Dial”, except say “Digit Store” in STEP 1 and “Store” in STEP 4.

► Dialing a phone number saved as a nametag

A nametag is a convenient way to store important or frequently called phone numbers for easy access at any time. To do this, choose a frequently-called number to store, the example below uses your home telephone number.

● How to store a nametag

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Store”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Phone number to store, please”, say the entire number you wish to store with no pauses. The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

STEP 3 Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

STEP 4 When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say “home”.

STEP 5 When the system responds with “About to store home. Does that sound OK?”, say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

STEP 6 The system responds with “Storing home”.

- The system can store up to 20 nametags.

- Try to use multi-syllable nametags such as “my home”, and “the office”.

- Try to avoid similar-sounding nametags like “Tim” and “Kim”.

When using the “Dial” and “Store” commands, the system will recognize 7, 10, and 11-digit phone numbers. When dialing or storing a phone number, you can say “zero” or “oh” for 0.

- How to place a call using a stored nametag

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Call”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say the stored nametag.

STEP 3 The system responds with “Calling [nametag]”.

- How to hear a list of your stored nametags

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Directory”.

STEP 2 The system will list your nametags.

- ▶ Dialing the last number you called (“Redial”)

You can dial the last number you called by using the “Redial” feature.

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Redial”.

STEP 2 The system will respond with “Redialing [#]”.

- ▶ Dialing a number a Lexus Link Advisor downloaded to your vehicle

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Number recall”.

STEP 2 The system will respond with “Connecting to number recall”.

■ Receiving a call

When someone calls you, you will hear a ring tone. Press the  button to answer the call.

If you do not answer within 30 seconds, the system will terminate the incoming call.

■ Ending a call

When your call is finished, press the  button to end the call.

3-7. Other interior features

■ Accessing voicemail and sending number tones to an automated phone system

You can access a voicemail system and respond to a number request from an automated phone system. When you receive the request for a number while in a call, press the  button after saying the numbers one at a time, say "Dial".

If you do not say any commands within 5 seconds after pressing the button, or if you press the button twice, the system cannot receive the number tones you are trying to send. Press the button to try again.

■ How to retrieve your phone number

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with "Lexus Link ready", say "My number".

STEP 2 The system responds with "Your number is [#]".

If the response is "Personal calling unavailable", this means your personal calling feature is not yet active, this may take a few days from vehicle delivery. It could also mean that the personal calling service is not available in your area. Press the  button to check with an Advisor. Now that you have your number, take a moment to practice by making your first call to your home phone. Remember, the system recognizes numbers better when you say them quickly.

■ Verifying remaining units (minutes)

- ▶ To verify remaining minutes

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Verify”.

STEP 3 The system responds with “You have [#] units remaining”.

- ▶ To add more calling units (minutes)

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Add”.

STEP 3 The system responds with “Connecting to the Personal Calling Center”.

■ Security code/locking your system

The personal calling function can be locked using a 4-digit security code. While the system is locked, it is only possible to communicate with the Lexus Link Call Center.

To turn on/off the security

STEP 1 Press the  button. When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Security”.

STEP 2 When the system responds with “Enter first digit of code please”, say your 4-digit code one digit at a time.

STEP 3 After the fourth digit, the system responds with “Security (code ####) is now on/off”.

3-7. Other interior features

■ Speech recognition information

The Lexus Link speech recognition systems use speech technology that is designed to understand a wide range of speakers of American English. However, the technology may not work as well if a regional or ethnic accent is encountered. If the speech recognition system does not work properly, refer to the following.

- The system does not recognize your command properly if noise is present. Perform the following to improve voice command recognition.
 - Turn down or off the air conditioning system.
 - Slow down to reduce wind noise.
 - Close the windows and the moon roof to block outside noise.
 - Have all occupants be quiet so that the system does not recognize their conversation as a command.
- When to speak
Say a command within 5 seconds after the system prompts you to speak.
- How to speak
 - Speak forcefully and clearly.
 - Speak calmly and naturally.
 - The driver should speak while facing forward, and the passenger should speak facing the inside rear view mirror.
 - Avoid speaking with a rising intonation. Use a flat or falling intonation.
- Tips for one-word commands
 - The system recognizes only one word at a time for personal calling. (There are some exceptions, such as “Advanced services” and “My number”.)
 - When inputting the security codes or voice-activated keypad number, you must say them one digit at a time. When inputting a phone number, the speech recognition system can recognize 7, 10, and 11-digit numbers as well as the number 911.

- Tips for entering a phone number using the “Dial” and “Store” commands
 - You do not need to say “Dial”, “Store” or “Verify” after the phone number.
 - If the phone number entered is not 7, 10, or 11 digits, use the “Dial” or “Store” command.
 - Do not pause between the digits.
 - Speech recognition does not recognize the words “Hundred” or “Thousand”. Instead, say each digit.
 - Speech recognition often works better when the digits are combined smoothly into a single phrase.
 - If the system does not recognize your command properly, use the “Digit dial” command to enter one digit at a time.
- If problems continue
 - Say each one of the syllables in the word clearly.
 - Be sure to articulate each sound in the word.
 - If the system is confusing 2 commands that are similar, be sure to pronounce the distinction.
 - Avoid clipping short words and syllables.
 - Try speaking louder to prevent background noise from drowning out your voice.
- Audible voice prompts

Some of the voice guidance instructions can be changed to Spanish. Press the  button and ask a Lexus Link Advisor.

■ Information on Advanced Services

See the Lexus Link area of the Lexus website at www.lexus.com/lexuslink/ or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) for more information.

■ Certification for the Lexus Link System

FCC ID: SCWTR-423-A2

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3-7. Other interior features

CAUTION

■ FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications in construction not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This device is approved for Mobile Application only and, to comply with applicable FCC radio frequency exposure regulations, must be used with a distance of at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) between the antenna and the body of any person at all time during use.

Maintenance and care

4

4-1. Maintenance and care	352	4-2. Maintenance.....	357
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior.....	352	Maintenance requirements.....	357
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior	354	General maintenance.....	359
		Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs	362
		4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance.....	363
		Do-it-yourself service precautions.....	363
		Hood	366
		Positioning the jack	367
		Engine compartment	369
		Tires.....	383
		Tire inflation pressure	393
		Wheels	397
		Air conditioning filter	399
		Electronic key battery	401
		Checking and replacing fuses.....	403
		Headlight aim	419
		Light bulbs.....	421

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.

Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.

- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- If water no longer beads on clean paint, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ High pressure automatic car washes

Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows. Before entering an automatic car wash, check that the fuel filler door is closed.

■ Aluminum wheels

Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.

■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
 - After driving near the sea coast
 - After driving on salted roads
 - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
 - If you see dead insects or insect droppings on the paint
 - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
 - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
 - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Caution about the exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot. When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

 **NOTICE**

■ **To protect your vehicle's painted surfaces**

Do not use organic cleaners such as benzene or gasoline.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

■ Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.
Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in shaded and ventilated area.

■ Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. The excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

CAUTION

■ Water in the vehicle

- Be careful not to splash or spill liquid on the floor.
- Do not splash water on the electric components in the engine compartment. This may cause the malfunction of the electric components.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 67)
Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

4-1. Maintenance and care

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
- Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

■ General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

■ Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself. Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus service and repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

■ Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

4-2. Maintenance

■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

CAUTION

■ Hazardous materials

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 379)
- Used engine oil contains chemicals that have been shown to cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid prolonged and repeated contact. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

4-2. Maintenance

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Services Guide/Owner’s Manual Supplement”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Brake fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 378)
Engine/inverter coolant	• At the correct level? (→P. 376)
Engine oil	• At the correct level? (→P. 371)
Exhaust system	• No fumes or strange sounds?
Radiator/condenser/hoses	• Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 377)
Washer fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 382)

Luggage compartment

Items	Check points
12 volt battery	• Maintenance-free (→P. 379)

4-2. Maintenance

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Transmission "Park" mechanism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can the vehicle be hold securely on an incline with the shift lever in "P"?
Brake pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulls to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Head restraints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Function properly?
Lights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do all the lights come on? • Headlights aimed correctly? (→P. 419)
Parking brake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?
Seat belts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors/trunk	• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tire	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inflation pressure is correct? • Tire surfaces not worn or damaged? • Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • Wheel nuts are not loose?

CAUTION

■ If the hybrid system is running

Turn off the hybrid system and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

4-2. Maintenance

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

■ Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the 12 volt battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

■ When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

■ If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
12 volt battery condition (→P. 379)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Grease• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 378)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid• Rag or paper towel• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine/inverter coolant level (→P. 376)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water.• For Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water.• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 371)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 403)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Headlight aim (→P. 419)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Phillips-head screwdriver
Radiator and condenser (→P. 377)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 393)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 382)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use) • Funnel

CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury.

■ When working on the engine compartment:

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, inverter, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

 CAUTION

■ **When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille**

Be sure the power switch is "OFF".

With the power switch in "IG-ON" mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 377)

■ **Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

 NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

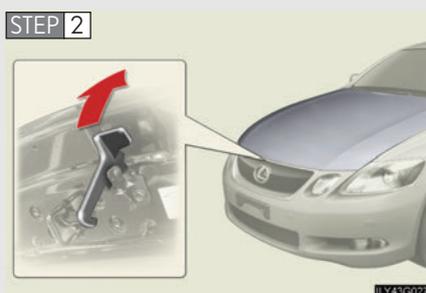
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.



Pull the hood lock release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.



Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

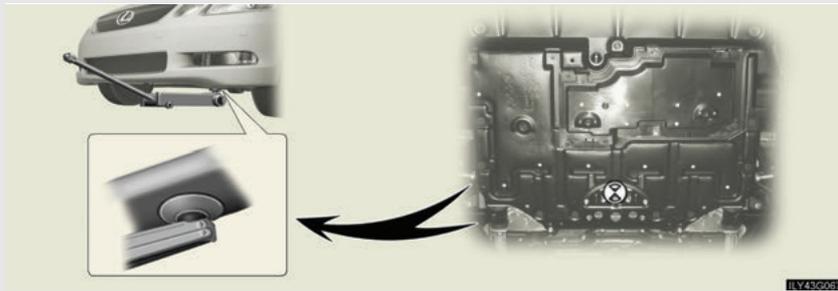
Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

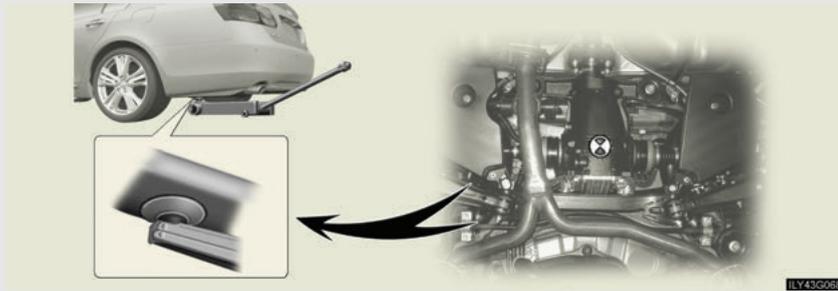
Positioning the jack

When raising your vehicle with the jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

► Front



► Rear



4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

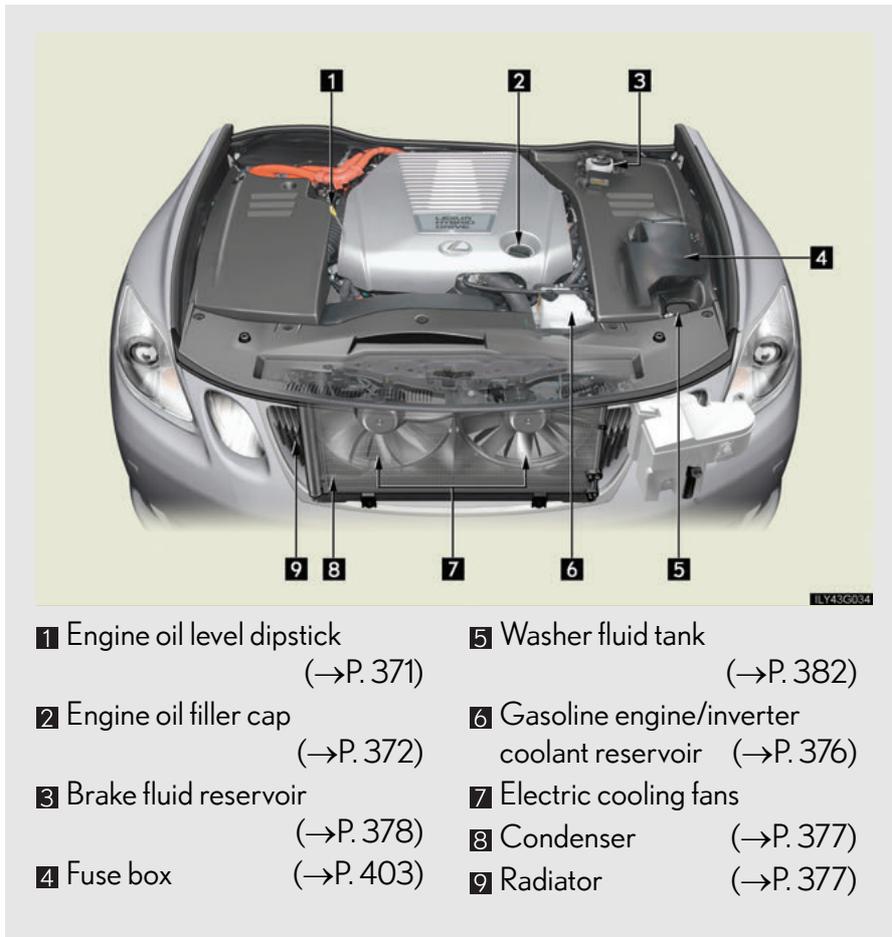
■ When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury.

- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the jack.
Always use automotive jack stands or a solid, level, surface.
- Do not start the hybrid system while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".
- Make sure to set the jack properly at the jack point.
Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the jack.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Engine compartment



4

Maintenance and care

- 12 volt battery
→P. 379

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

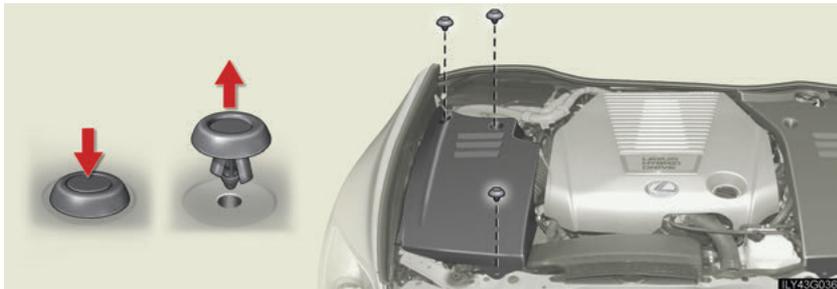
Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the cover

▶ Front



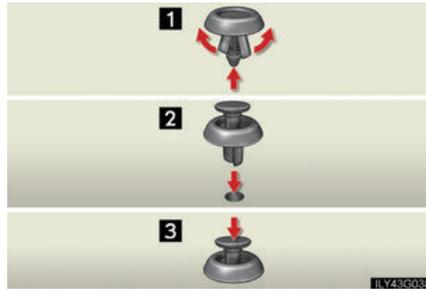
▶ Right-hand side



▶ Left-hand side



■ Installing the clips



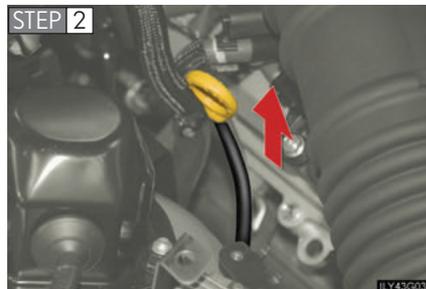
- 1 Push up center portion
- 2 Insert
- 3 Press

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the hybrid system, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

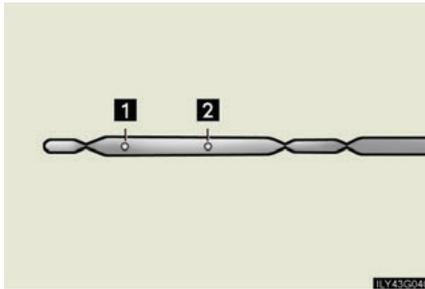
STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



- 1** Low
- 2** Full

■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

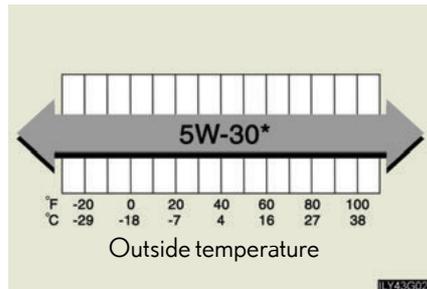
Oil grade	ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise until you hear a click.

■ Recommended viscosity



SAE 5W-30 is the best choice for good fuel economy, and good starting in cold weather.

*: If SAE 5W-30 oil is not available, SAE 10W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 5W-30 at the next oil change.

■ How to read oil container labels

Some oil containers are labeled with ILSAC certification marks that help you to select the proper oil.



4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km). If the vehicle consumes more than this amount, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Resetting the engine oil maintenance data (U.S.A. only)

Perform the following steps:

- STEP 1** Press the "DISP" switch (→P. 120) to change the multi-information display to blank.
- STEP 2** Turn the power switch to "OFF" mode.
- STEP 3** Turn the power switch to "IG-ON" mode with the trip meter reset button held down.
- STEP 4** Keep pressing the button for longer than 7 seconds after the power switch is in "IG-ON" mode.



After the above operation, the message shown in the left will appear on the display.

The master warning light and tone will turn on. After 5 seconds, the system reset is completed.

 CAUTION

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly retightened.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the hybrid system is cold.



1 Reservoir cap

2 “FULL”

3 “LOW”

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, reservoir cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer pressure test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine/inverter coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **When the coolant may be hot**

Do not remove the radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

 NOTICE

■ **When adding the coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and anti freeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it damage to parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

 CAUTION

■ **The radiator and condenser may be hot after driving**

To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser after driving.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Brake fluid

■ Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

■ Adding fluid

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

■ Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

 NOTICE

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

12 volt battery

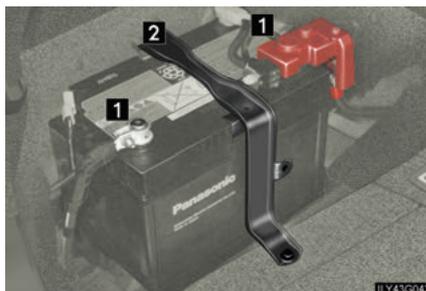
■ Location



The 12 volt battery is located in the left-hand side of luggage compartment.

■ Exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



- 1 Terminals
- 2 Hold-down clamp

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Before recharging

When recharging, the 12 volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12 volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the 12 volt battery

In some cases, the hybrid system may not start. Follow one or both of the following procedures:

- After opening and closing the driver's door, wait 10 seconds then attempt to start the hybrid system. (If the system does not start first time, repeat the procedure.)
- With the shift lever in "P" and the power switch in the "OFF" mode, open and close any door, then attempt to start the hybrid system.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at both methods, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Chemicals in the 12 volt battery**

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the 12 volt battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the 12 volt battery

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

NOTICE

■ When recharging the 12 volt battery

Never recharge the battery while the hybrid system is on. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedule and treadwear.

■ Checking tires

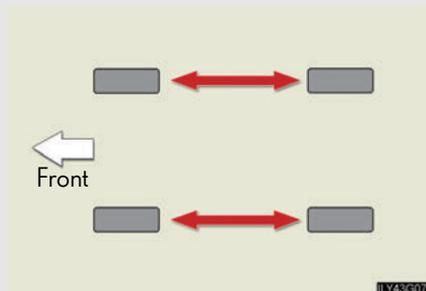


- 1 New tread
- 2 Treadwear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “△” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

■ Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

■ The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 440, 445)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID code registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 386)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.
- When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the power switch to “OFF” mode.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 493)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the power switch to “IG-ON” mode.



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly three times and the message “PRESSURE INITIAL” appears on the multi-information display.

STEP 5 Wait for a few minutes with the “IG-ON” mode, and then turn power switch to the “OFF” mode.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Registering and selecting ID codes

■ Registering ID codes

2 sets of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes can be registered. Once a second set of tires is registered at “2nd”, you can switch between tire set settings simply by pressing the tire pressure warning select switch.

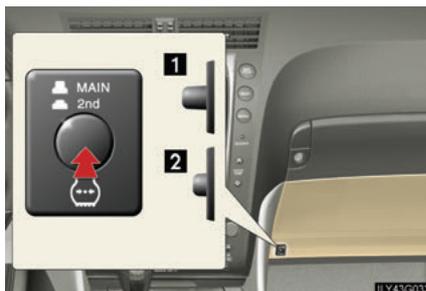
There are 2 settings:

“MAIN” position: The ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter on the tires originally installed on the vehicle is registered.

“2nd” position: The ID code is not registered. When you replace a new set of tires, purchase tire pressure warning valves and transmitters from your Lexus dealer and have the new ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ Selecting ID codes

When replacing tires, make sure to select the ID code set that matches the new tire set. If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to wrong tire setting, the tire pressure warning system will not operate properly. After about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.



1 “MAIN”

2 “2nd”

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **Tire life**

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ **If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires**

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

■ **Low profile tires (245/40R18, P245/40R18 and 245/40ZR18 tires)**

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or snow chains on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. (→P. 393, 498).

■ Tire types

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 176)

■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the tires with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the system again.

■ When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not flash 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute after driving for 20 minutes.

■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION**■ When inspecting or replacing tires**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

⚠ NOTICE**■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels and tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tire.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

NOTICE

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **Low profile tires (245/40R18, P245/40R18 and 245/40ZR18 tires)**

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when receiving impact from the road surface. Therefore pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid hot holes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so can lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ **If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Tire inflation pressure

■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 493)



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			INFORMATION SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT		
SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL X FRONT X REAR X The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 1000 kg or 2200 lb.			NOMBRE DE PLACES ASSISES TOTAL X AVANT X ARRIERE X Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais être supérieur à 1000 kg ou 2200 lb.		
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	PNEUS	DIMENSION	PRESSION DE GONFLAGE À FROID
FRONT	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXkPa,XXPSI	AVANT	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXkPa,XXPSI
REAR	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXkPa,XXPSI	ARRIERE	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXkPa,XXPSI
SPARE	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXkPa,XXPSI	SECOURS	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXkPa,XXPSI
SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			POUR DE PLUS AMPLES INFORMATIONS, VOIR LE MANUEL DU PROPRIETAIRE		

ILY43G032

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Inspection and adjustment procedure



- 1 Tire valve
- 2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust tire pressure.

If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

■ Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every 2 weeks, or at least once a month. If equipped, do not forget to check the spare.

■ **Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure**

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure**

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened
- Lexus wheels with after market chrome plating

■ Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be switched over from the old wheels. (→P. 384)

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

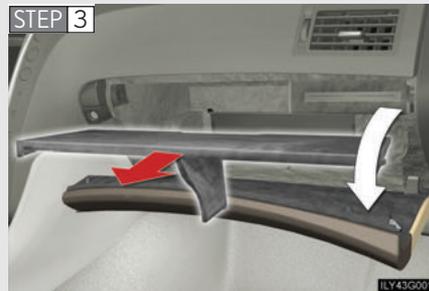
■ Removal method

STEP 1 Set the air conditioning system to recirculated mode.

The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in the outside air mode.

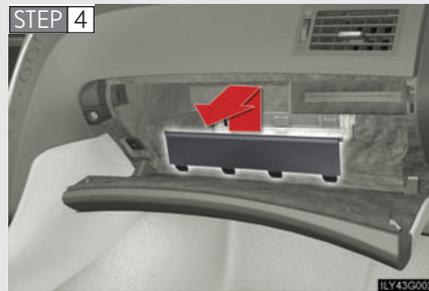
STEP 2 Turn the power switch to "OFF" mode.

STEP 3



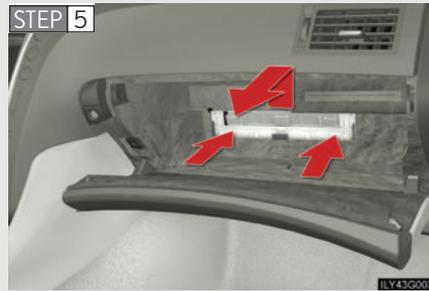
Open the glove box and remove the partition.

STEP 4



Remove the filter cover.

STEP 5



Push the tabs and remove the filter case.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Cleaning method

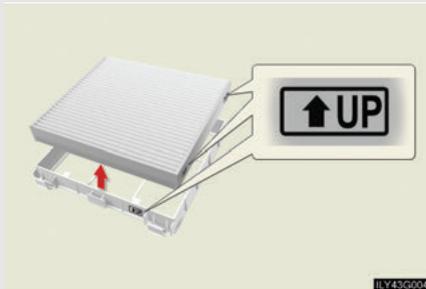


If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the downward side.

Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 72 psi (500 kPa, 5.0 kgf/cm² or bar).

If it is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

■ Replacement method



Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the system

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

■ You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



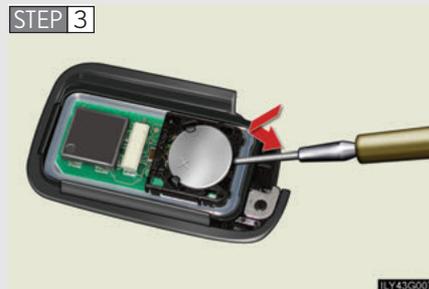
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ If the electronic key battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by a Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children.
These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the electronic key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Checking and replacing fuses

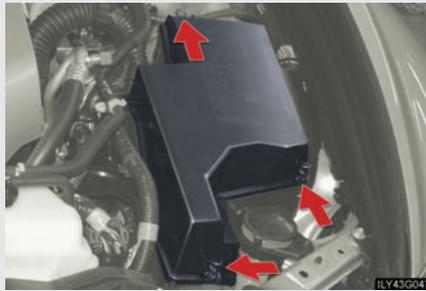
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the power switch to "OFF" mode.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover if necessary.
→P. 370

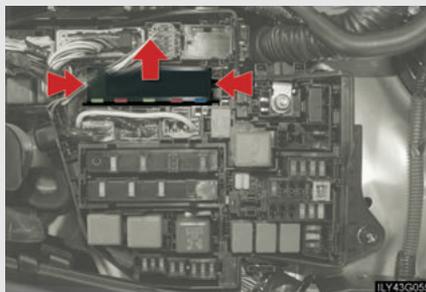
STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.

► Engine compartment



Remove the clips.

► Front controller in the engine compartment fuse box



Lift the lid off while pushing the tabs on either side.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



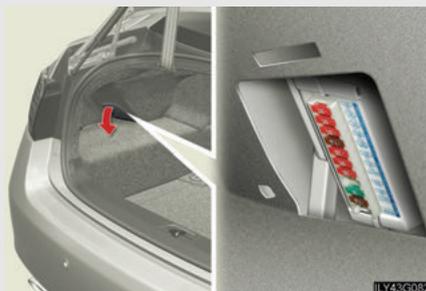
Remove the lid.

▶ Passenger's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Luggage compartment



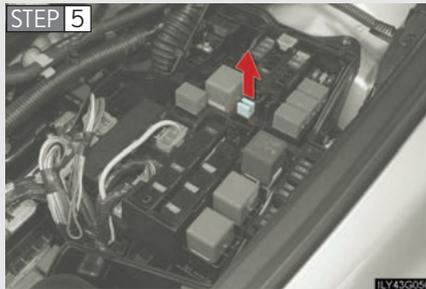
Remove the cover.

- ▶ Luggage compartment (vehicles with active stabilizer suspension system)



Remove the lid.

STEP 4 After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” (→P. 408) for details about which fuse to check.



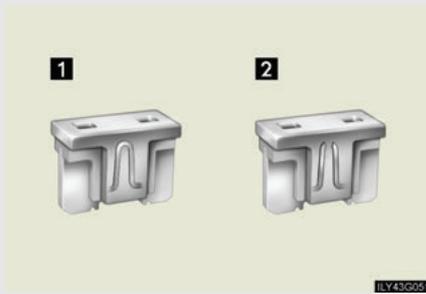
STEP 5

Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

▶ Type A

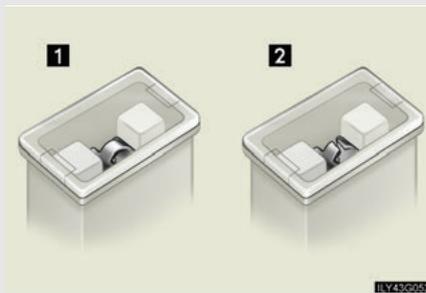


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type B

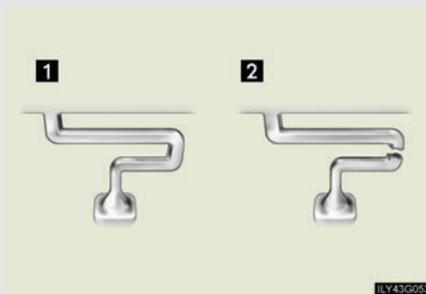


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type C



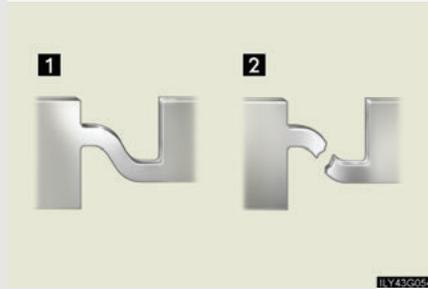
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

▶ Type D



1 Normal fuse

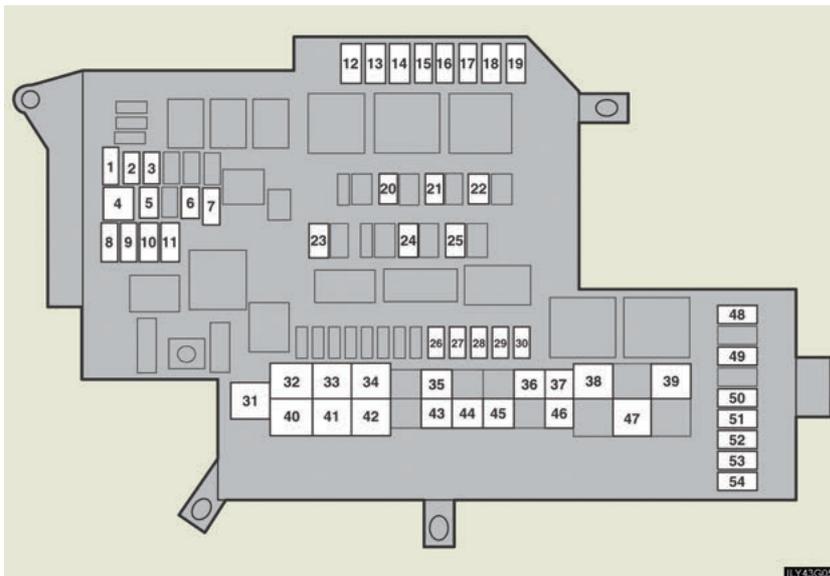
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

■ Engine compartment



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	FR CTRL-B	25	H-LP HI, HORN
2	RELIEF VLV	10	Fuel system
3	ETCS	10	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
4	H-LP CLN	30	Headlight cleaner
5	STB-AM	30	Active stabilizer suspension system
6	DEICER	25	—
7	FR CTRL-AM	30	FR TAIL, FR FOG, WASH

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
8	IG2	10	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, noise filter
9	EFI No.2	10	Fuel system, exhaust system
10	H-LP R LWR	15	Headlight low beam (right)
11	H-LP L LWR	15	Headlight low beam (left)
12	D/C CUT	30	DOME, MPX-B
13	IGCT No.3	7.5	Hybrid battery (traction battery)
14	IGCT No.2	7.5	Hybrid system
15	MPX-B	7.5	Power windows, door control system, power seat, electronically controlled brake system, combination switch, electric tilt and telescopic steering, gauges and meters
16	DOME	7.5	Interior lights, foot lights, vanity light, gauges and meters
17	ABS MAIN1	10	Electronically controlled brake sys- tem
18	ABS MOTOR	30	ABS
19	ABS MAIN2	10	Electronically controlled brake sys- tem
20	F/PMP	25	Fuel system
21	EFI	25	EFI2, multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
22	INJ	20	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

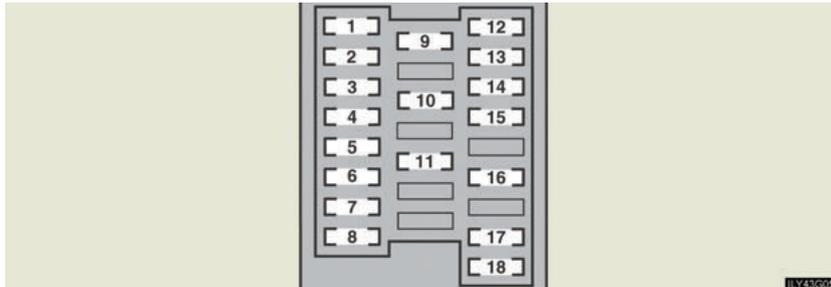
	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
23	A/F	15	Fuel system
24	INV W/P	10	Hybrid system
25	IGCT No.1	20	Hybrid system, IGCT No.2, IGCT No.3
26	FR FOG	15	Fog light
27	FR TAIL	10	Tail light, rear side marker light
28	WASH	20	Windshield washer
29	HORN	10	Horn
30	H-LP HI	20	Headlight high beam
31	DC/DC	140	Charging system
32	RAD FAN	60	Electric cooling fans
33	LH J/B AM	80	S/ROOF, FR P/SEAT LH, TV, A/C, FUEL OPN, FR WIP, H-LP LVL, FR S/HTR LH, A/C W/P
34	E/G AM	60	H-LP CLN, FR CTRL-AM, DEICER, STB AM
35	HEATER	50	Air conditioning system
36	DEFOG	50	Rear window defogger
37	ABS2	30	VSC, ABS
38	RH J/B-AM	80	AM1, OBD, STOP SW, TI & TE, FR P/SEAT RH, STR LOCK, SECURITY, ECU-IG R, RH-IG, F S/HTR RH, CIG, PWR OUTLET, AIR SUS

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
39	RR J/B	80	STOP LP R, STOP LP L, RR TAIL, PSB, RR FOG, RR-IG1
40	OIL PUMP	60	Transmission
41	EPS	80	EPS
42	P/I-B1	60	EFI, F/PMP, INJ
43	E/G-B	30	EM-VLV, FR CTRL-B, ETCS
44	MAIN	30	H-LP R LWR, H-LP L LWR
45	VGRS	40	VGRS
46	ABS1	50	ABS MOTOR, ABS MAIN1, ABS MAIN2
47	P/I-B2	60	A/F, BATT FAN, IGCT, INV W/P
48	BATT FAN	20	Electric cooling fans
49	RAD No.1	30	Audio system
50	RAD No.2	30	Audio system
51	IG2 MAIN	20	IG2, GAUGE, IGN
52	TURN-HAZ	15	Front turn signal lights, rear turn signal lights
53	ABS MAIN3	10	Electronically controlled brake system
54	ECU-B	10	VGRS, EPS, Lexus Link System ECU

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Driver's side instrument panel



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	FR WIP	30	Windshield wipers
2	RR-IG	7.5	RR-IG1
3	LH-IG	10	Emergency flashers, seat belt pretensioners, headlight cleaners, exhaust system, rear window defogger, electric cooling fans, front left door control system, rear left door control system
4	H-LP LVL	7.5	Adaptive front lighting system
5	A/C W/P	7.5	Air conditioning system
6	RAD No.3	10	Audio system
7	FR DOOR LH	20	Front left door control system
8	RR DOOR LH	20	Rear left door control system
9	FR S/HTR LH	15	Seat heaters, seat heaters and ventilators
10	ECU-IG LH	10	VGRS, EPS, electronically controlled brake system, yaw rate & G sensor, dynamic radar cruise control system, rear view monitor system, moon roof

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

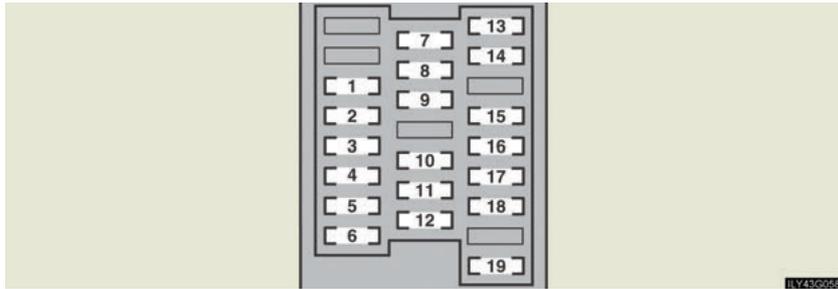
	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
11	PANEL	7.5	Steering switches, distance control switch, audio system, glove box light, switch illumination, cigarette lighter, shift lever light, touch screen, rear personal lights
12	S/ROOF	25	_____
13	FUEL OPEN	10	Fuel lid opener, trunk opener
14	LH-B	10	Theft deterrent system
15	TRK OPN	10	Trunk opener
16	TV	7.5	Touch screen, rear view monitor system
17	A/C	7.5	Air conditioning system
18	FR P/SEAT LH	30	Power seat

4

Maintenance and care

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Passenger's side instrument panel



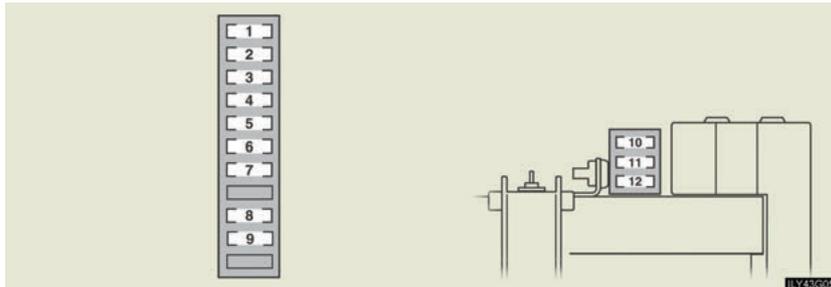
Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1 ECU-IG RH	10	Electric tilt and telescopic steering, combination switch, power seat, smart access system with push-button start, air conditioning system, touch screen, shift lock system, tire pressure warning system, front/rear stabilizer system
2 FR S/HTR RH	15	Seat heaters, seat heaters and ventilators
3 RH-IG	7.5	Front right door control system, rear right door control system, seat belt pretensioners, transmission, seat heaters, seat heaters and ventilators
4 AM2	15	Starting system
5 FR DOOR RH	20	Front right door control system
6 RR DOOR RH	20	Rear right door control system
7 AIR SUS	20	AVS
8 PWR OUTLET	15	Power outlet
9 CIG	15	Cigarette lighter

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
10	ACC	7.5	Audio system, smart access system with push-button start, touch screen, rear view monitor system, Lexus Link System ECU
11	IGN	10	Smart access system with push-button start, SRS airbag system, stoplights, hybrid system, steering lock system, electronically controlled brake system, Lexus Link System ECU, front passenger occupant classification system ECU
12	GAUGE	7.5	Gauges and meters
13	STR LOCK	25	Steering lock system
14	SECURITY	7.5	Smart access system with push-button start
15	TI & TE	20	Electric tilt and telescopic steering
16	AM1	7.5	—
17	STOP SW	7.5	Stoplights, shift lock system
18	OBD	7.5	On-board diagnosis system
19	FR P/SEAT RH	30	Power seat

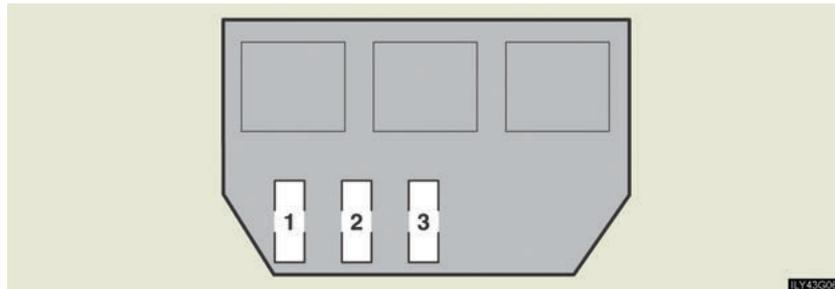
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Luggage compartment



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	RR TAIL	10	Tail lights, license plate lights
2	STOP LP R	10	High mounted stoplights, stoplights
3	STOP LP L	10	Stoplights, back-up light
4	RR FOG	7.5	_____
5	RR-B	10	Trunk light
6	RR-IG1	10	Pre-collision seat belt, seat belt pre-tensioners
7	RR-IG2	10	_____
8	PSB	30	Pre-collision seat belt
9	RR S/SHADE	7.5	Rear sunshade
10	RH J/B-B	30	FR DOOR RH, RR DOOR RH, AM2
11	LH J/B-B	30	FR DOOR LH, RR DOOR LH, RAD No.3
12	R/B-B	15	D/C cut

■ **Luggage compartment**
(vehicles with active stabilizer suspension system)



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	STB FR	50	Front stabilizer
2	STB RR	30	Rear stabilizer
3	STB DC/DC	30	DC/DC converter

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 421)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in the circuits**

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

NOTICE

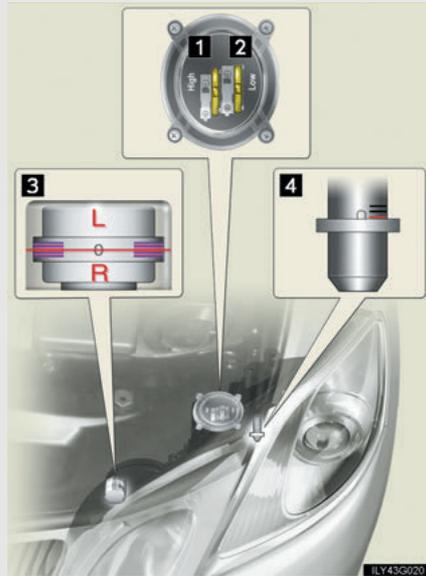
■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

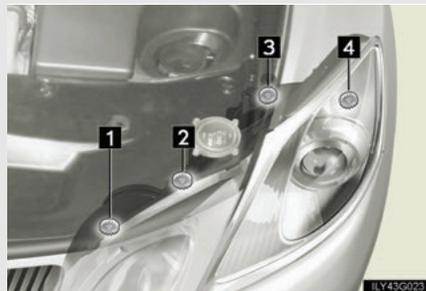
Headlight aim

Gauges



- 1 High beam vertical position
- 2 Low beam vertical position
- 3 High beam horizontal position
- 4 Low beam horizontal position

Adjustment bolts



- 1 High beam horizontal adjustment
- 2 High beam vertical adjustment
- 3 Low beam adjustment bolt A
- 4 Low beam adjustment bolt B

Before checking the headlight aim

- STEP 1** Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.
- STEP 2** Park the vehicle on level ground.
- STEP 3** Sit in the driver's seat.
- STEP 4** Bounce the vehicle several times.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

■ Adjusting the headlight aim

▶ Low beam (vertical adjustment)



Using a Phillips-head screwdriver, turn adjustment bolt A so that the bubble is within the 2 center lines.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns.



Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1.

▶ Low beam (horizontal adjustment)

Turn adjustment bolt A so that the red line on the gauge is in the middle of the "O" mark (within the blue lines to either side of the gauge).

▶ High beam (vertical and horizontal adjustment)

Turn each adjustment bolt in either direction so that the bubble is within the 2 center lines (vertical), and the red line on the gauge is in the middle of the "O" mark (within the blue lines to either side of the gauge) (horizontal).

If you feel that there is a large deviation, have the headlight aim adjusted at a Lexus dealer.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

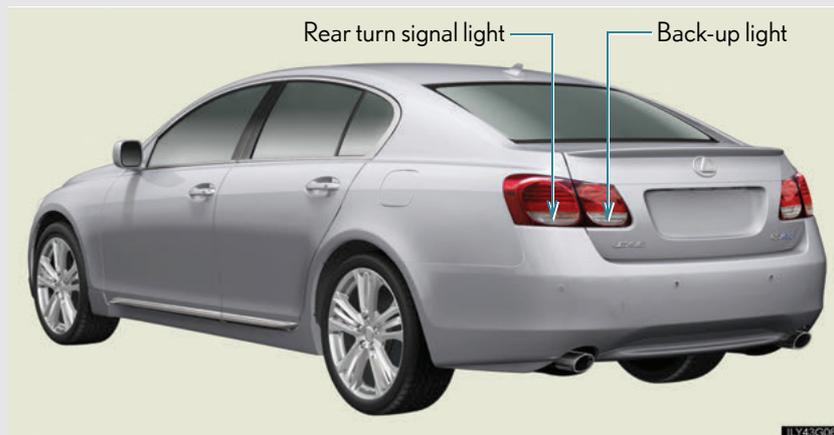
Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

- **Prepare a replacement light bulb.**
Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 494)
- **Remove the engine compartment cover if necessary.**
→P. 370
- **Front bulb locations**



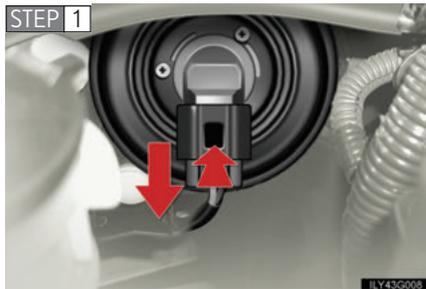
- **Rear bulb locations**



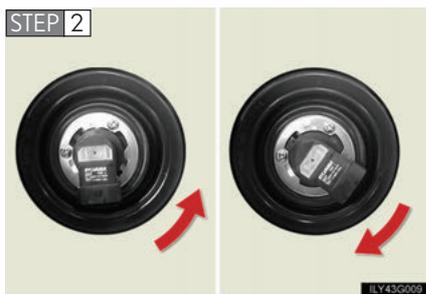
4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Replacing light bulbs

■ Headlight high beam

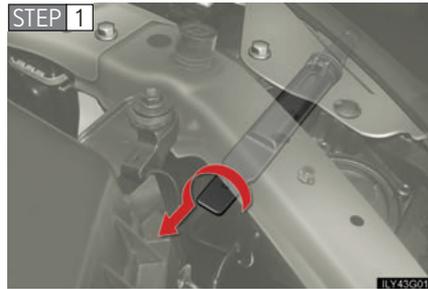


Unplug the connector while pushing the lock release.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise to remove it.

■ Parking light

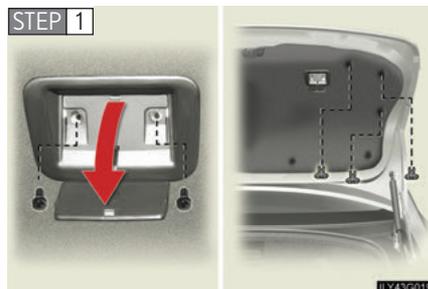


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

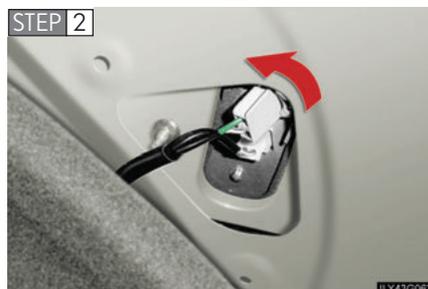


Remove the light bulb.

■ Back-up light

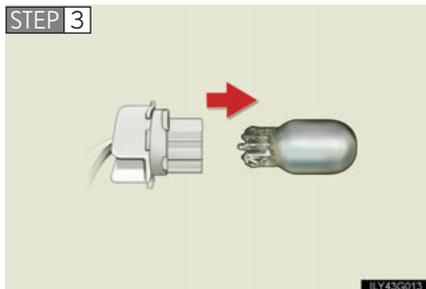


Open the trunk lid. Remove the trunk handle and panel cover clips.



Partly remove the trunk panel cover and turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

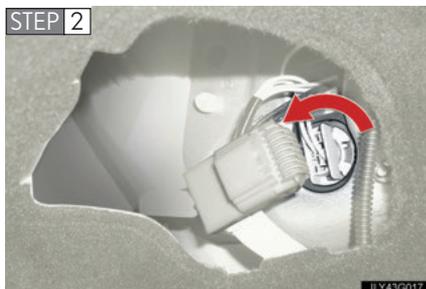


Remove the light bulb.

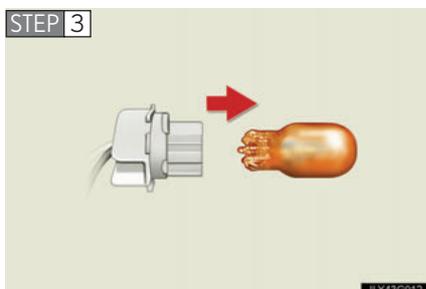
■ Rear turn signal light



Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

■ Bulbs other than the above

If any of the bulbs listed below has burnt out, have your Lexus dealer replace it.

- Headlight low beams (high-intensity discharge bulbs)
- Fog lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Front side marker lights
- Stop/tail lights
- Tail lights
- Rear side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ LED light bulbs

The tail, tail/stop and high mounted stoplights consist of a number of LEDs. If any LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

If two or more LEDs in a stoplight burn out, your vehicle may not conform to local laws (SAE).

■ High-intensity discharge (HID) headlights

If voltage to the high-intensity discharge bulbs is insufficient, the light may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The high-intensity discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

CAUTION

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.
Doing so may result in serious injury due to electric shock.

■ High-intensity discharge (HID) headlights

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing high-intensity discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high voltage socket while the headlights are turned on.
20000V is momentarily generated and may cause severe injury by electric shock.

■ To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

5-1. Essential information..... 428

- If your vehicle needs to be towed 428
- If you think something is wrong 435
- Event data recorder 436

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency..... 438

- If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 438
- If a warning message is displayed..... 444
- If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with run-flat tires) 460
- If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with standard tires) 461
- If the hybrid system will not start 471
- If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 472
- If you lose your keys 473
- When the electronic key battery is discharged 474
- If the 12 volt battery is discharged 476
- If your vehicle overheats 480
- If the vehicle becomes stuck 483

5-1. Essential information

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

The wheels and axle on the ground must be in good condition.

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The hybrid system is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

▶ Towing eyelet



■ Emergency towing procedure

- STEP 1** Release the parking brake.
- STEP 2** Put the shift lever in "N".
- STEP 3** The power switch must be in the "ACC" mode (hybrid system off) or the "IG-ON" mode (hybrid system on).

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelet and the cable or chain.
- If the hybrid system is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

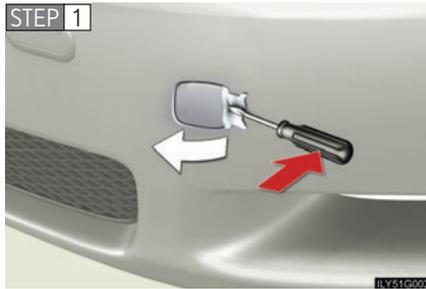
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission.

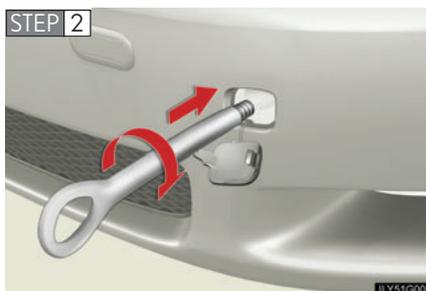
5-1. Essential information

Installing towing eyelet

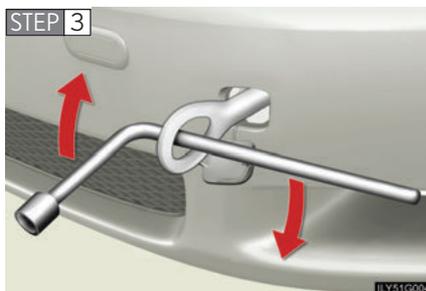


Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

■ Location of the emergency towing eyelet

→P. 461

⚠ CAUTION

■ Installing towing eyelet to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelet may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

Towing with a sling-type truck



⚠ NOTICE

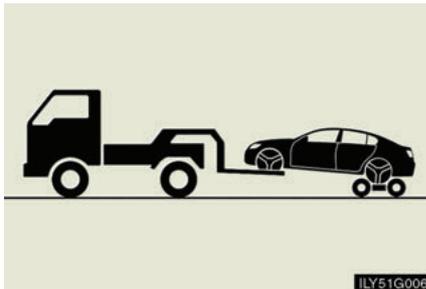
■ To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear.

5-1. Essential information

Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From front



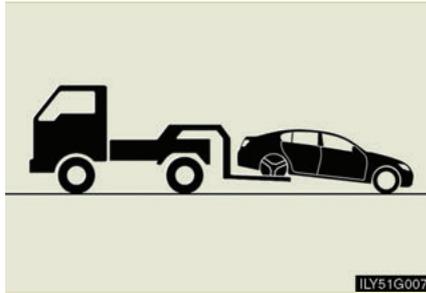
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

NOTICE

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.

► From rear



Switch to "ACC" mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.

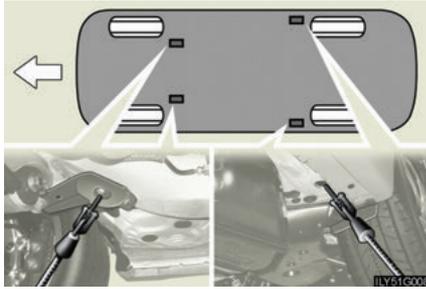
 NOTICE

■ To prevent damaging the vehicle

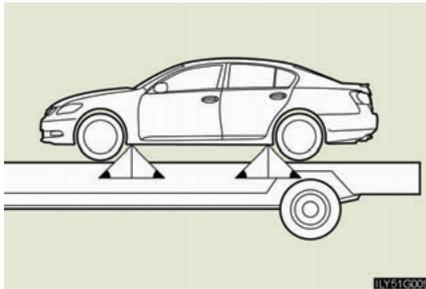
- Do not tow the vehicle with the power switch "OFF".
The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheel straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

5-1. Essential information

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

5-1. Essential information

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the hybrid system

■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

5-1. Essential information

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is a system to record data in a crash or a near car crash event. This is called an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

In a crash or a near car crash event

The EDR may record some or all of the following information.

- Gasoline engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data

Your Lexus' Electronic Control Unit (ECU) may contain another EDR. There are a variety of driving situations which include activating the vehicle stability control (VSC) under which the VSC EDR will record certain information. The VSC EDR may record some or all of the following information:

- Behavior of the vehicle
- Steering wheel angle
- Vehicle speed

- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- To what extent the brake pedal was applied
- To what extent the ECU controlled the condition of the 4 wheels
- Vehicle stability control system diagnostic data

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)	Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)* <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Low brake fluid• Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.
 (Canada)	

*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

→P. 450

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system while the hybrid system is running.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	Malfunction indicator lamp Malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The hybrid system; • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The transmission control system.
	SRS warning light Malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The SRS airbag system; • The front passenger occupant classification system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system.
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	ABS warning light Malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ABS; or • The brake assist system.
	ECB^{*1}/VSC warning light Malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The electronically controlled brake system; or • The VSC.
	Electric power steering system warning light Malfunction in the EPS.
	Pre-collision system warning light (if equipped) Malfunction in the pre-collision system.

*1: Electronically Controlled Brake System

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*² A door or the trunk is not fully closed.	Check that all doors and the trunk are closed.
	Low fuel level warning light Remaining fuel (Approximately 2.6 gal. [10 L, 2.2 Imp.gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
	Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*³ Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*³ Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Tire pressure warning light	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure.	Adjust the tire inflation pressure.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	<p>Master warning light</p> <p>A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.</p>	<p>Take appropriate action in accordance with the message displayed on the multi-information display.</p>

*2: Open door warning buzzer:

→P. 449

*3: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts reminder sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

First check the following:

- Is your vehicle low on gas?
If it is, refuel the vehicle immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after taking several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ SRS warning light

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- Front airbag sensors
- The curtain shield airbag sensors
- The side and curtain shield airbag sensors
- The occupant detection sensor
- The front passenger occupant classification ECU
- "AIRBAG ON" and "AIRBAG OFF" indicator lights
- The pressure sensor
- The belt tension sensor
- The seat belt buckle switches
- The driver's seat position sensor
- The inflators
- The warning light
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light.

 **CAUTION****■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

● Vehicles with run-flat tires:

- Decelerate to the lowest appropriate speed as soon as possible. Do not drive over 55 mph (90 km/h).
- Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Have the tire replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

● Vehicles with standard tires:

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If a warning message is displayed

If a warning is shown on the multi-information display, stay calm and perform the following actions:



- 1 Multi-information display
- 2 Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning light turns on again after performing the following actions, contact your Lexus dealer.

Stop the vehicle immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning message	Details
 <p>CHECK HYBRID SYSTEM</p>	<p>Malfunction in the hybrid system.</p>
 <p>LOW OIL PRESSURE</p> <p>(Flashing)</p>	<p>Abnormal engine oil pressure. The warning light may turn on if the engine oil pressure is too low.</p>

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning message	Details
<p>CHECK HEADLIGHT</p> 	<p>Malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system.</p>
<p>CHECK REARLAMP</p> 	<p>Malfunction in the rear lights system.</p>
<p>CHECK SYSTEM</p>  	<p>Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. The tire pressure warning light will blink for 1 minute and then stay on.</p>
<p>CHECK S/T LOCK</p>  (Flashing)	<p>Malfunction in the steering lock system.</p>

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details
<p>CHECK ACT. STABI.</p>  <p>(If equipped)</p>	<p>Malfunction in the active stabilizer suspension system.</p>
<p>CHECK PCS SYSTEM</p> <p>PCS</p>  <p>(If equipped)</p>	<p>Malfunction in the PCS.</p>
  <p>(If equipped)</p>	<p>Intuitive parking assist malfunction. The malfunctioning sensor is shown flashing on the display. (The illustration shows malfunctioning left front sensor.)</p>
<p>CHECK CRUISE SYSTEM</p> <p>CRUISE (Flashing)</p>  <p>(If equipped)</p>	<p>Malfunction in the radar cruise control system. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Switch the power switch to "OFF" and then to "IG-ON" mode again to reset the cruise control system.</p>

■ If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The system will be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is more than 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm² or bar).

The system may be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If the tire pressure warning select switch is set to a different tire setting.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- If tire chains are used.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently when the power switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

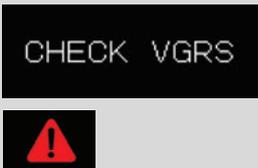
■ Precaution when installing a different tire

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warning may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning message	Details
	<p>Malfunction in the TRAC, VSC or hill-start assist control system.</p> <p>In some cases, only "CHECK VSC" or "CHECK ECB*" is displayed.</p>
	<p>Malfunction in the ABS or BA.</p> <p>In some cases, only "CHECK VSC" or "CHECK ECB*" is displayed.</p>
	<p>Malfunction in the VGRS.</p>
 (Steering guide symbol and arrows are flashing)	<p>The steering sensor cable is broken and signals cannot be received.</p>

*: Electronically Controlled Brake System

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

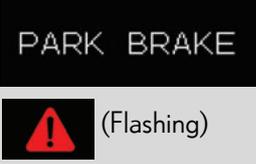
A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message turns off.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
<p>LEFT FRONT DOOR </p> <p>RIGHT FRONT DOOR </p> <p>LEFT REAR DOOR </p> <p>RIGHT REAR DOOR </p>	<p>One or more of the doors is not fully closed.</p> <p>The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed.</p> <p> flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</p>	<p>Make sure that all of the doors are closed.</p>
<p>HOOD OPEN </p>	<p>The hood is not fully closed.</p> <p> flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that hood is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</p>	<p>Close the hood.</p>

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	<p>The trunk is not fully closed.</p> <p> flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that trunk is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).</p>	Close the trunk.
	<p>The moon roof is not fully closed (with the power switch "OFF" and the driver's door opened).</p>	Close the moon roof.
	<p>The parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of more than 3 mph [5 km/h]).</p>	Release the parking brake.
	<p>The washer fluid level is low.</p>	Add washer fluid.
	<p>The hybrid system has overheated.</p>	Stop and check. (→P. 480)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
<p>LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL</p> 	The engine oil level is low.	Check the engine oil level, and add if necessary.
<p>OIL MAINT REQD SOON</p>  <p>(U.S.A. only)</p>	<p>The engine oil is scheduled to be changed.</p> <p>Comes on approximately 4500 miles (7200 km) after the engine oil is changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance data has been reset).</p>	Check the engine oil, and change if necessary.
<p>OIL MAINT REQD</p>  <p>(U.S.A. only)</p>	<p>The engine oil should be changed.</p> <p>Comes on approximately 5000 miles (8000 km) after the engine oil is changed (and the oil maintenance data has been reset).</p>	Check and change the engine oil.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
  	<p>Low tire inflation pressure.</p>	<p>Check the tire inflation pressure, and adjust to the appropriate level.</p>
  (Flashing)  (If equipped)	<p>The PCS is not currently functional.</p>	<p>Clean the grille and the sensor. This message appears when the pre-collision system is hot. In this case, wait until the system cools down.</p>
  (If equipped)	<p>Intuitive parking assist is dirty or covered with ice. (The illustration shows something on the left front sensor.)</p>	<p>Clean the sensor.</p>
  (Flashing)  (If equipped)	<p>The radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice.</p>	<p>Clean the sensor.</p>

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
<p>CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE</p> <p>CRUISE (Flashing)</p>  (If equipped)	<p>The radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch the mode select to either the normal or power mode. • If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to either the intermittent or the slow mode.
 (Flashing) (If equipped)	<p>Your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in radar cruise mode).</p>	<p>Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.</p>
<p>WARMING UP MAXIMUM VEHICLE SPEED 60MPH</p> 	<p>The vehicle is unable to drive over 60 mph (or 120 km/h) until the transmission warms up.</p>	<p>Wait until the transmission warms up.</p>
<p>LOW TRACTION BATTERY STOP THE VEHICLE. SHIFT TO P RANGE</p>  (Flashing)	<p>The hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.</p>	<p>Stop the vehicle and shift the shift lever to "P".</p>
<p>STOP THE VEHICLE, SHIFT TO P RANGE</p>  (Flashing)	<p>The gasoline engine cannot operate or the shift lever is in "N" for a long time.</p>	<p>Stop the vehicle and shift the shift lever to "P".</p>

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
  (Flashing)	The transmission is out of “P” when attempting to start the hybrid system.	Shift the shift lever to “P” before pressing the power switch.

■ After changing the engine oil (U.S.A. only)

Make sure to reset the oil maintenance data. (→P. 374)

■ Approach warning message

In the following instances, there is the possibility that the approach warning will not activate even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases.

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed.
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set.
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed.

⚠ CAUTION**■ Maintenance of the tires**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Messages displayed when refueling

The following messages are displayed after the fuel lid opener is pressed. If the messages do not change or are displayed continuously, have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

Message	Details
 PLEASE WAIT NOW OPENING ■■■■■■■■■■	Preparing the vehicle for refueling. Wait a moment.
 REFUEL READY	You may commence refueling. Finish refueling within 30 minutes.
CLOSE FUEL LID	Close the fuel lid.

Other messages

If the following message is displayed, take appropriate action and confirm that the message has disappeared.

Message	Details
SHIFT TO P RANGE WHEN PARKING  (Flashing)	The driver's door is opened when the transmission is out of "P" with the hybrid system on. Shift the shift lever to "P".
 (If equipped)	Calibrate the neutral position of the steering wheel. (→P. 153)

Have the malfunction repaired immediately.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light turn off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	—	 (Comes on for 8 seconds.)  (Flashing)	The electronic key is not detected when attempting to start the hybrid system.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.
Once	3 times	  (Flashing)	An open door other than the driver's door is closed while the electronic key is outside the detection range and the power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.	Confirm the location of the electronic key.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Once	3 times	<p>KEY IS NOT DETECTED</p>  (Flashing)	An open door other than the driver's door is closed while the electronic key is outside the detection range and the power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode with the shift lever in "P".	Turn the power switch "OFF" or confirm the location of the electronic key.
Continuous	Continuous	<p>SHIFT TO P RANGE</p> <p>KEY IS NOT DETECTED</p> (Displayed alternately)  (Flashing)	An open door other than the driver's door is closed while the electronic key is outside the detection range and the power switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode with the shift lever not in "P".	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shift the shift lever to "P". • Confirm the location of the electronic key.
Once	—	<p>LOW KEY BATTERY</p>  (Flashing)	The electronic key battery is low.	Replace the battery. (→P. 401)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
—	—		An open door has been closed and the power switch has been turned twice to the "ACC" mode from "OFF" mode.	Press the power switch while applying the brakes.
—	—	  (Flashing)	The steering lock has not released within 3 seconds of pressing the power switch. The power switch indicator will flash green for 15 seconds.	Press the power switch again while turning the steering wheel with the brake pedal depressed.

5

When trouble arises

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with run-flat tires)

Take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as possible.

■ Run-flat tires (A “RFT” or “DSST” mark is molded on the sidewall)



You can continue driving a vehicle with run-flat tires even if any tire goes flat.

It is able to run for a maximum of 100 miles (160 km) at a speed below 55 mph (90 km/h) after the tire pressure warning light comes on. (→P. 440)

■ In some condition (such as at high temperatures)

You can not continue driving for up to 100 miles (160 km).

■ If you cannot distinguish between the standard tires and run-flat tires

Consult your Lexus dealer.

■ For the detailed information on run-flat tires

See the tire warranty book.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When replacing the tires

- Have the tires replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer. The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters will be affected by the installation or removal of tires.
- Replace the grommets for the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters as well.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

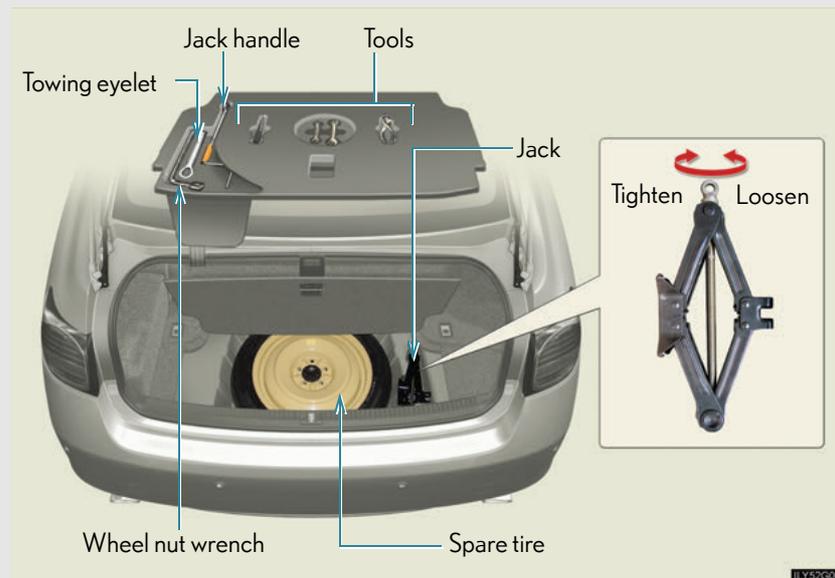
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you have a flat tire (Vehicles with standard tires)

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

■ Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Stop the hybrid system.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

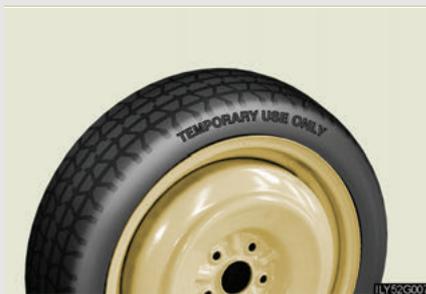
■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

■ Compact spare tire

The compact tire saves space in your luggage compartment, and its lighter weight helps to enhance fuel economy and permits easier installation in case of a flat tire.



The compact spare tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.

■ The compact spare tire

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
Use the compact spare tire temporarily only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire.
(→P. 493)

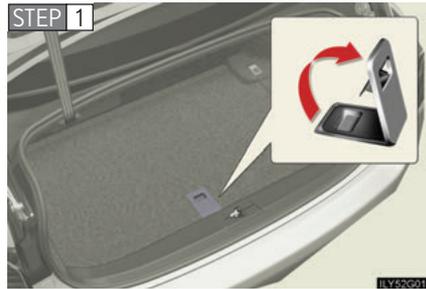
■ Tread life

The compact spare tire can be used many times, if necessary. It has tread life of up to 3000 miles (4800 km) depending on road conditions and your driving habits. When treadwear indicators appear on the tire, replace the tire. (→P. 383)

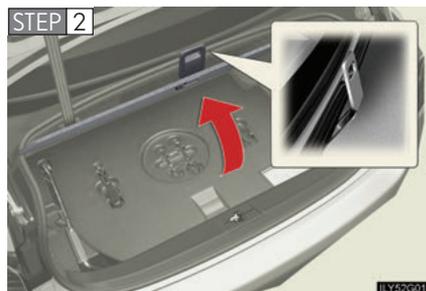
■ When using the compact spare tire

As the spare tire is not equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be warned. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

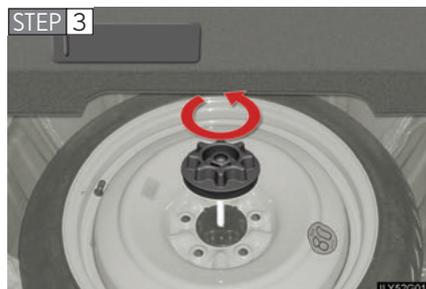
Taking out the spare tire



Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.



Secure the panel using the hook provided.



Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Replacing a flat tire

STEP 1



Chock the tires.

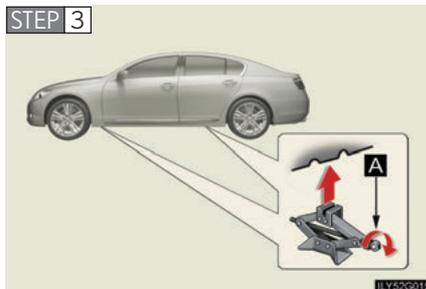
	Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

STEP 2



Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

5

When trouble arises

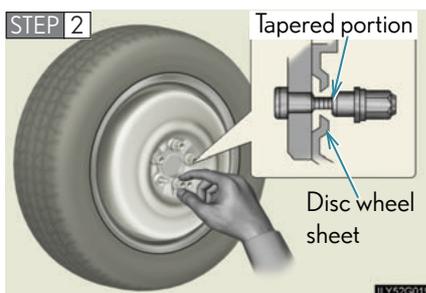
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

Installing the spare tire



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.



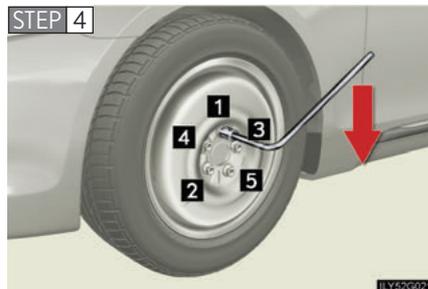
Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel sheet.



Lower the vehicle.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ If you have a flat rear tire on a road covered with snow or ice

Install the compact spare tire on the front of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the rear tires.

STEP 1 Replace a front tire with the compact spare tire.

STEP 2 Replace the flat rear tire with the tire removed from the front of the vehicle.

STEP 3 Fit tire chains to the rear tires.

■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 384)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the hybrid system while your vehicle is supported by the jack.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

■ Replacing a flat tire

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. The oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels. Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheels may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

 CAUTION

■ **When using the spare tire**

- Remember that your spare tire is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use two spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, deceleration and braking, as well as sharp cornering.

■ **Speed limit when using the compact spare tire**

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 50 mph (80 km/h) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

NOTICE

■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.

Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ When replacing the tires

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

- Replace the grommets for the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters as well.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If the hybrid system will not start

If the hybrid system will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.103), consider each of the following points.

■ **The hybrid system will not start even if you are carrying the correct electronic key**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The electronic key battery may be discharged. (→P.17)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
Add fuel to the vehicle.
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.
- There may be a malfunction in the hybrid vehicle immobilizer system.
(→P.59)

■ **The interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The 12 volt battery may be discharged. (→P.476)
- The 12 volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

■ **The interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the 12 volt battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The 12 volt battery may be discharged. (→P.476)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

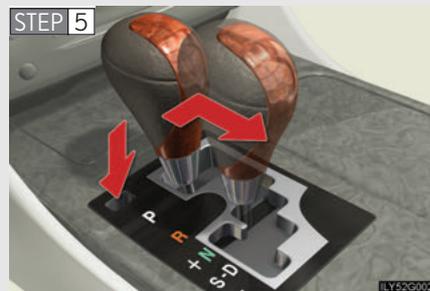
STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the power switch to the "ACC" mode.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.



Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you lose your keys

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using one of the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

When the electronic key battery is discharged

If the electronic key battery is discharged, the doors and trunk can be opened by the mechanical key. The hybrid system can be still started by following the procedure.

Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

► Doors



Using the mechanical key in order to perform the following operations:

- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Closes the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)
- 3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

- 4 Opens the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)

► Trunk



Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.

Starting the hybrid system

STEP 1 Put the shift lever in "P" and apply the brakes.



STEP 2 Hold the electronic key close to the power switch (within 0.4 in. [10 mm]). Make sure that the button side of the key is facing away from the power switch.

An alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the key with the depleted battery if any of the doors will be opened and closed while this operation.

STEP 3 Press the power switch within 5 seconds after the buzzer sounds, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

If the hybrid system still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Replacing the key battery

As this procedure is the temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately. (→P. 401)

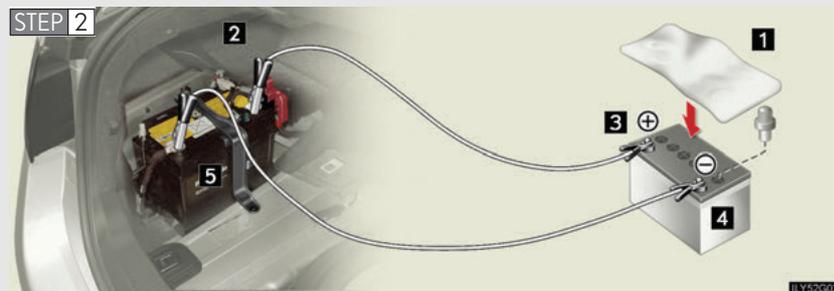
5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the 12 volt battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the hybrid system if the 12 volt battery is discharged.

You can call your Lexus dealer, Roadside Assistance or Lexus Customer Service.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12 volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the trunk using the mechanical key. (→P. 474)



Connecting the jumper cables.

- 1** If required, remove all vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)
- 2** Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.
- 3** Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 4** Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 5** Negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12 volt battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the power switch "OFF".

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed on the second vehicle and turn the power switch to the "IG-ON" mode, then start the vehicle's hybrid system.

STEP 6 Make sure the "READY" light comes on. If the light does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

STEP 7 Once the vehicle's hybrid system has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the hybrid system starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **To prevent 12 volt battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the hybrid system is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

■ **When the 12 volt battery is removed or discharged**

The hybrid system may not start. (→P. 380)

Also, the following systems must be initialized.

- Power windows (→P. 51)
- Variable gear ratio steering (→P. 153)
- Tire pressure warning system (→P. 385)
- Intuitive parking assist (→P. 153)

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the “+” and “-” terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

Hybrid vehicles cannot be push-started.

■ **When handling jumper cables**

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If your vehicle overheats

■ Electric motor (traction motor) and inverter

If the message "HYBRID SYSTEM OVERHEAT" is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ Gasoline engine

If the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone, the gasoline engine has probably overheated.

Observe the following steps:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the automatic air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the hybrid system and carefully lift the hood.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the hybrid system running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 370)

STEP 4 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature gauge begins to fall and then stop the hybrid system.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the hybrid system immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.

STEP 5



After the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently, check the coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.



Add coolant if required.

Water can be used in an emergency measure if coolant is unavailable. (→P. 490)

Have the vehicle checked at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Overheating

In the following situations, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The message “HYBRID SYSTEM OVERHEAT” is displayed on the multi-information display.
- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

- **To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**
 - Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and engine drive belt while the hybrid system is running.
 - Do not loosen the radiator cap while the hybrid system and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Wait until the hybrid system has cooled down before adding coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot hybrid system too quickly can cause damage to the hybrid system.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

- STEP 1** Stop the hybrid system. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever in "P".
- STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.
- STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.
- STEP 4** Restart the hybrid system.
- STEP 5** Turn off TRAC. (→ P. 166)
- STEP 6** Carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and racing the hybrid system.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

- 6-1. Specifications 486
 - Maintenance data..... 486
 - Fuel information..... 495
 - Tire information..... 498
- 6-2. Customization 510
 - Customizable features 510
- 6-3. Initialization 514
 - Items to initialize 514

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data

Dimensions and weight

Overall length	189.9 in. (4825 mm)	
Overall width	71.6 in. (1820 mm)	
Overall height *	56.1 in. (1425 mm)	
Wheelbase	112.2 in. (2850 mm)	
Tread	Front	60.4 in. (1535 mm)
	Rear	60.6 in. (1540 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)	815 lb. (370 kg)	

*:Unladen vehicle

Vehicle identification

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

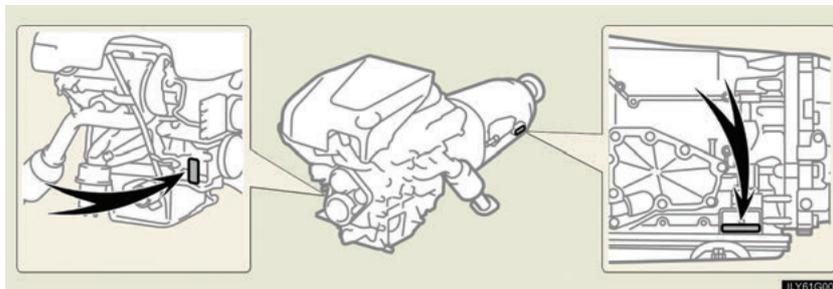


This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

■ The engine number and electric motor (traction motor) number



These numbers are stamped on the locations shown in the above illustration.

6-1. Specifications

Engine

Model	2GR-FSE
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.27 in. (94.0 × 83.0 mm)
Displacement	210.9 cu.in. (3456 cm ³)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only
Octane Rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity	17.2 gal. (65 L, 14.3 Imp.gal.)

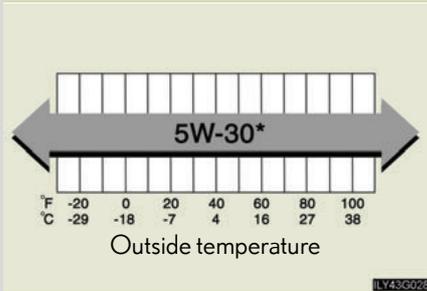
Electric motor (Traction motor)

Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Maximum output	147 kW
Maximum torque	275 N•m (28.0 kgf•m, 202.8 ft•lbf.)

Hybrid battery (Traction battery)

Type	Nickel-Metal hydride battery
Voltage	7.2 V/module
Capacity	6.5 Ah (3HR)
Quantity	40 modules
Overall voltage	288 V

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (drain and refill)	
with filter	6.6 qt. (6.3 L, 5.5 Imp.qt.)
without filter	6.2 qt. (5.9 L, 5.2 Imp.qt.)
Oil grade	ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Recommended oil viscosity	Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the above grade and viscosity. 

*:5W-30 is an oil that provides optimal levels of fuel efficiency.

Oil viscosity:

- The 5W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load condition.

6-1. Specifications

Cooling system

Capacity		
Gasoline engine		9.8 qt. (9.3 L, 8.1 Imp.qt.)
Inverter		3.0 qt. (2.9 L, 2.5 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant”• Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug		
Make	DENSO NGK	FK20HBR11 ILFR6D11T
Gap		0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

Electrical system

12 volt battery	
Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.6 — 12.8V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the hybrid system and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5A max.

Differential

Oil capacity	1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85

Transmission

Fluid capacity Drain and refill	5.7 qt. (5.4 L, 4.8 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

 NOTICE**Transmission fluid type**

Using transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

6-1. Specifications

Brakes

Pedal clearance ^{*1}	2.9 in. (73 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	Less than 0.08 in. (2.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake pedal travel ^{*2}	7—9 clicks
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

^{*1}: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 200 N (20.4 kgf, 45 lbf) while the hybrid system is running.

^{*2}: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 300 N (30.6 kgf, 67.4 lbf).

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)
-----------	---------------------------

Tires and wheels

Tire size	245/40R18 93Y, P245/40R18 93V, 245/40ZR18, T155/70D17 110M (spare)
Front and rear tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm ² or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm ² or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar)
Wheel size	18 × 8 J, 17 × 4T (spare)
Wheel nut torque	76 ft•lbf (103 N•m, 10.5 kgf•m)

6-1. Specifications

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights (low beam)	D4S	35	A
	Headlights (high beam)	HB3	60	B
	Front turn signal lights	—	21	C
	Parking lights	—	5	D
	Fog lights	HB4	51	E
	Front side marker light	194	5	D
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	C
	Back-up lights	921	16	D
	Trunk light	—	5	F
Interior	Vanity lights	—	8	D

- A: D4S high-intensity discharge bulbs
- B: HB3 halogen bulbs
- C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
- D: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
- E: HB4 halogen bulbs
- F: Double end bulbs

6-1. Specifications

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

Premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If premium gasoline is not available

If 91 Octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

However, use of unleaded fuel with an Octane Rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

6-1. Specifications

■ Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

 NOTICE**■ Notice on gasoline quality**

- Do not use leaded gasoline.
Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.
At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel-related poor driveability

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ When refueling with gasohole

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

6-1. Specifications

Tire information

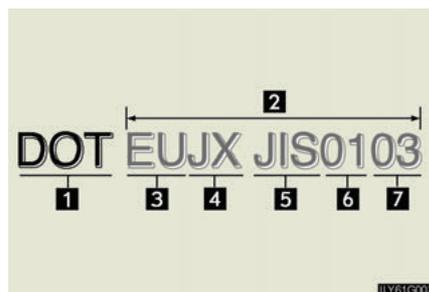
Typical tire symbols



- 1 Tire size (→P. 500)
- 2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 499)
- 3 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 383)
- 4 Run-flat tire (RFT) or standard tire (→P. 460)
This vehicle can be equipped with either run-flat tires (RFT) or standard tires. A "RFT" or "DSST" mark is molded on the sidewall of the run-flat tire.
- 5 Tire ply composition and materials
Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

- 6** Radial tires or bias-ply tires
A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.
- 7** TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE
A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.
- 8** Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 503)
- 9** Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 503)
This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.
- 10** Uniform tire quality grading
For details, see “Uniform Tire Quality Grading” that follows.
- 11** Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 388)
An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.
- 12** “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” (→P. 462)
A compact spare tire is identified by the phrase “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” molded into its sidewall. This tire is designed for temporary emergency use only.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

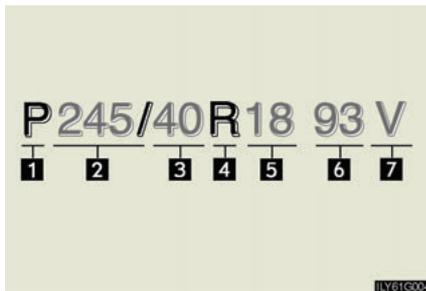


- 1** DOT symbol*
- 2** Tire Identification Number (TIN)
- 3** Tire manufacturer's identification mark
- 4** Tire size code
- 5** Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
- 6** Manufacturing week
- 7** Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

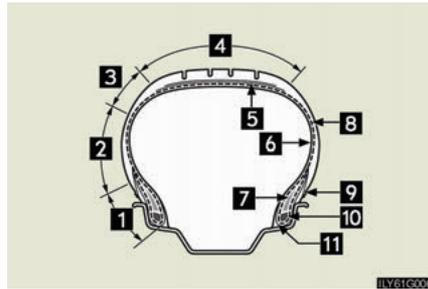
- 1 Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)
- 2 Section width (millimeters)
- 3 Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)
- 4 Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- 5 Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6 Load index (2 or 3 digits)
- 7 Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)

Tire dimensions



- 1 Section width
- 2 Tire height
- 3 Wheel diameter

Tire section names



- 1 Bead
- 2 Sidewall
- 3 Shoulder
- 4 Tread
- 5 Belt
- 6 Inner liner
- 7 Reinforcing rubber
- 8 Carcass
- 9 Rim lines
- 10 Bead wires
- 11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S.A. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

6-1. Specifications

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

■ Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows

6-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing it by two

Tire related term	Meaning
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs

6-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass
Intended outboard sidewall	(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs

Tire related term	Meaning
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall

6-1. Specifications

Tire related term	Meaning
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*:Table 1— Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

6-2. Customization

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 13)	Smart access system with push-button start	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	ON	OFF
Wireless remote control (→P. 22)	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in 1-step, all doors unlocked in 2-step	All doors unlocked in 1-step
			OFF
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	30 seconds 120 seconds

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 22)	Operation indicator (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation indicator (Buzzer)	ON	OFF
	Trunk unlocking function	ON	OFF
	Trunk unlocking operation	Push and hold	Push twice One short push
	Panic function	ON	OFF
	Buzzer sounds when pushing  with any door not closed	ON	OFF
Door lock (→P. 25)	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in 1-step, all doors unlocked in 2-step	All doors unlocked in 1-step
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	OFF	ON
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	OFF	ON
	Shift the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors	ON	OFF
	Shift the shift lever to position other than "P" locks all doors	ON	OFF

6-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Power windows (→P. 50)	Linked door lock operation	ON	OFF
	Linked door key operation	Open and close	Open only
			Close only
Wireless remote control linked operation	ON	OFF	
Moon roof (→P. 52)	Linked door lock operation	ON	OFF
	Linked door key operation	Open and close	Open only
			Close only
	Linked operation of components when door key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	ON	OFF
Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only	
Automatic light control system (→P. 122)	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Levels 1 to 5
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 seconds
			60 seconds
			90 seconds
Daytime running light	ON	OFF*	

*: Vehicles sold outside Canada

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Windshield wipers and washer (→P. 126)	Switching operation when the vehicle is stationary	ON	OFF
	Drip prevention function	ON	OFF
	Time elapsed before the drip prevention function operates	Variable depending on the vehicle speed	3 seconds
Illumination (→P. 303)	Time elapsed before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds 30 seconds
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	ON	OFF
	Operation after the power switch turned "OFF"	ON	OFF
	Front/rear personal lights turned on when a door is opened	Corresponding light only	All lights OFF
	Foot lights	ON	OFF
	Shift lever light	ON	OFF
	Outer foot light	ON	OFF
Rear sunshade (→P. 324)	Time elapsed before the reverse operation feature activates	0.7 seconds	0 seconds
			0.9 seconds
			1.2 seconds

6-3. Initialization

Items to initialize

After reconnecting or performing maintenance on the 12 volt battery, the hybrid system may not start. (→P. 380) Also, the following items must be initialized for normal system operation.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Power window	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After reconnecting or changing the battery • After changing a fuse 	P. 51
Variable gear ratio steering		P. 153
Intuitive parking assist		P. 153
Engine oil maintenance data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After changing engine oil 	P. 374
Tire pressure warning system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When rotating the tires on vehicles differing with front and rear tire inflation pressures. • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc. • When changing the tire size. 	P. 385

For US owners

7

Reporting safety defects for
U.S. owners..... 516

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

Index

Alphabetical index 518

What to do if... 526

Alphabetical index

Alphabetical index

- A**
- A/C (Air conditioning system) 192
 - ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 164
 - Active stabilizer suspension
 - system 164
 - Air conditioning system (A/C)
 - Air conditioning filter 399
 - Automatic air conditioning
 - system 192
 - Airbags
 - Airbag operating conditions 69
 - Airbag precautions for your
 - child 72
 - Airbag warning light 439
 - Curtain shield airbag
 - precautions 75
 - General airbag precautions 72
 - Locations of airbags 66
 - Modification and disposal of
 - airbags 76
 - Side airbag precautions 72
 - Side and curtain shield airbags
 - operating conditions 69
 - SRS airbags 66
 - Alarm 61
 - Antenna 209
 - Armrest 323
 - Ashtrays 316
 - Audio system
 - Antenna 209
 - Cassette player 212
 - CD player/changer 216
 - DVD information 251
 - DVD player/changer 232
 - DVD video/audio 235
 - MP3/WMA disc 224
 - Optimal use 255
 - Radio 203
 - Steering switches 259
 - Video CD 247
 - Automatic headlight leveling
 - system 124
 - Automatic light control system 122
 - AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) 163
- B**
- BA (Brake Assist) 164
 - Back-up lights
 - Wattage 494
 - Battery
 - 12 volt battery 379
 - Checking 379
 - Hybrid battery (Traction battery) 5
 - If the 12 volt battery is
 - discharged 476
 - Preparing and checking
 - before winter 176
 - Bluetooth® 263
 - Brake
 - Fluid 378
 - Parking brake 111
- C**
- Care
 - Exterior 352
 - Interior 354
 - Seat belts 355
 - Cargo capacity 172
 - Cargo hooks 327
 - CD player/changer 232
 - Chains 177
 - Child-protectors 26
 - Child restraint system (CRS)
 - Definition 82
 - Installation 85

Installing CRS with lower anchorages 89

Installing CRS with seatbelts 85

Installing CRS with top straps 90

Child safety

Airbag precautions 72

Child restraint system 82

Child-protectors 26

How your child should wear the seatbelt 43

Installing child restraints 85

Moon roof 54

Power window lock switch 50

Power window precautions 51

Removed electronic key battery precautions 402

Seat belt comfort guide 41

Seat belt precautions 44

Seat heater precautions 319, 321

Trunk 32

Cigarette lighter 317

Cleaning

Exterior 352

Interior 354

Seat belts 355

Clock 314

Coin holder 309

Compass 334

Condenser 377

Console box 307

Cooling system

Engine overheating 480

Cruise control

Cruise control 129

Dynamic radar cruise control 132

Cup holders 310

Curtain shield airbags 66

Customizable features 510

D **Daytime running light system** 123

Defogger

Rear window 199

Side mirror 199

Dimension 486

Dinghy towing 182

Display

Energy flow 6

Multi-information display 119

Touch screen 184

Trip information 120

Warning message 444

Do-it-yourself maintenance 363

Door courtesy lights 304

Door pocket 311

Doors

Door lock 25

Rear door child protector 26

Driver's seat belt reminder light 440

Driving

Correct posture 64

Procedures 96

DVD player/changer 232

E **Electronic key**

Replacing battery 401

When the electronic key battery is discharged 474

Alphabetical index

- Emergency, in case of
 - If a warning light turns on438
 - If a warning message is displayed 444
 - If the hybrid system will not start..... 471
 - If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P472
 - If the 12 volt battery is discharged476
 - If you have a flat tire 460, 461
 - If you lose your keys..... 473
 - If you think something is wrong.....435
 - If your vehicle becomes stuck....483
 - If your vehicle needs to be towed428
 - If your vehicle overheats..... 480
 - When the electronic key battery is discharged 474
- Energy monitor 6
- Engine
 - Compartment369
 - Hood.....366
 - How to start the hybrid system... 103
 - If the hybrid system will not start..... 471
 - Overheating..... 480
 - Power switch 103
- Engine compartment cover370
- Engine coolant temperature gauge.....112
- Engine/inverter coolant
 - Capacity490
 - Checking.....376
 - Preparing and checking before winter176
- Engine oil
 - Capacity489
 - Checking..... 371
 - Preparing and checking before winter..... 176
- Engine oil maintenance data374
- EPS (Electric Power Steering)164
- Event data recorder 436
- F** First-aid kit storage belt 327
- Floor mats326
- Fluid
 - Brake..... 378
 - Washer..... 382
- Fog lights
 - Switch.....125
 - Wattage..... 494
- Foot light304
- Front passenger occupant classification system77
- Front passenger's seat belt reminder light440
- Front seats
 - Adjustment33
 - Driving position memory35
- Front turn signal lights
 - Wattage..... 494
- Fuel
 - Capacity488
 - Fuel gauge112
 - Gas station information528
 - Information495
 - Refueling..... 55
 - Messages456
- Fuel filler door 55
- Fuses403

G Garage door opener..... 329
 Gas station information..... 528
 Gauges.....112
 Glove box 307

H Hands-free system 261
 Head restraints..... 38
 Headlight aim 419
 Headlight cleaner 128
Headlights
 AFS (Adaptive Front lighting System)..... 123
 Discharge headlights
 precautions 426
 Replacing light bulbs 421
 Switch..... 122
 Wattage 494
Heaters
 Seat heaters.....319, 321
 Side mirror199
Hill-start assist control164
Hood 366
Hooks
 Cargo.....327
 Shopping bag.....327
Hybrid system 2
 Emergency shut off system 6
 Energy monitor/consumption screen 6
 High voltage components 5
 Power meter 112
 Power switch.....103
Hybrid vehicle immobilizer system..... 59

I Illuminated entry system303
 I/M test.....362
 Indicator lights..... 116
Initialization
 Items to initialize 514
 Inside rear view mirror 47
 Instrument panel light control 113
Interior lights
 Interior lights..... 304
 Wattage.....494
Intuitive parking assist..... 141

J Jack
 Positioning the jack 367
 Replacing the wheel..... 461
Jack handle..... 461

K Keys
 If you lose your keys 473
 Key number plate 11
 Keys 11
 Power switch..... 103
 Mechanical key 11
 When the electronic key battery is discharged..... 474
 Wireless remote control 22

L Lexus Link System 338
Light bulbs
 Replacing 421
 Wattage.....494
Light sensitive optitron meter 114
Lights
 Fog light switch 125
 Headlights switch..... 122
 Interior lights list 303

Alphabetical index

- Replacing light bulbs.....421
 - Turn signal lever110
 - Vanity lights313
 - Wattage.....494
- M** **Maintenance**
- Do-it-yourself maintenance363
 - General maintenance359
 - Maintenance data.....486
 - Maintenance requirements357
- Meter**
- Instrument panel light control113
 - Meters112
- Micro dust and pollen removal mode.....195**
- Mirrors**
- Inside rear view mirror.....47
 - Side mirror heater199
 - Side mirrors48
 - Vanity mirrors.....313
- Moon roof.....52**
- MP3 disc224**
- Multi-information display119**
- O** **Odometer.....112**
- Oil**
- Engine oil.....371
- Opener**
- Fuel filler door.....55
 - Hood.....366
 - Trunk.....29
- Outside rear view mirrors**
- Adjusting and folding48
 - Driving position memory.....35
- Outside temperature display.....315**
- Overhead console308**
- Overheating, Engine.....480**
- P** **Parking brake.....111**
- Parking lights**
- Replacing light bulbs421
 - Switch.....122
 - Wattage494
- PCS (Pre-Collision System).....165**
- Personal lights.....305**
- Power meter112**
- Power outlet318**
- Power windows.....50**
- R** **Radar cruise control.....132**
- Radiator377**
- Radio203**
- RDS (Radio Data System)205**
- Rear sunshade324**
- Rear turn signal lights**
- Replacing light bulbs421
 - Wattage494
- Rear view monitor system160**
- Rear window defogger199**
- Replacing**
- Electronic key battery401
 - Fuses.....403
 - Light bulbs421
- Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners.....516**
- S** **Seat belts**
- Adjusting the seat belt41
 - Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR).....42
 - Child restraint system installation85

Cleaning and maintaining
the seat belts.....355
Emergency Locking Retractor
(ELR).....42
How to wear your seat belt.....40
How your child should wear
the seat belt.....43
Pre-collision seat belts.....42
Pregnant women,
proper seat belt use.....42
Reminder light.....440
Seat belt extenders.....43
Seat belt pretensioners.....41
Seat heaters.....319, 321
Seat ventilators.....321
Seating capacity175
Seats
Child seats/child restraint
system installation85
Cleaning354
Driving position memory35
Head restraint38
Properly sitting in the seat.....64
Seat adjustment.....33
Seat adjustment precautions.....33
Seat heaters.....319, 321
Ventilated seats.....321
Service reminder indicators117
Shift lever
If the shift lever cannot be
shifted from P.....472
Transmission.....106
Shift lock system472
Shopping bag hooks.....327
Side airbags.....66
Side marker lights
Switch.....122

Side mirror
Adjusting and folding.....48
Driving position memory35
**Smart access system with
push-button start**
Antenna location.....15
Entry function.....13
Starting the hybrid system.....103
Spare tire
Inflation pressure.....493
Spare tire.....462
Spark plug.....490
Specifications486
Speedometer112
Steering wheel
Adjustment.....46
Audio switches.....259
Driving position memory35
Storage compartment309
Storage feature.....306
Stuck
If your vehicle becomes stuck...483
Sun visors312
Switch
Fog light switch125
Light switches122
Mode select switch.....107
Power door lock switch25
Power switch.....103
Power window switch.....50
Window lock switch.....50
Wipers and washer switch126

Alphabetical index

- T** Tail lights
 Switch122
- Theft deterrent system**
 Alarm61
 Hybrid vehicle immobilizer
 system59
- Theft prevention labels**63
- Tire inflation pressure**493
- Tire information**
 Glossary503
 Size500
 Tire identification number499
 Uniform tire quality grading501
- Tires**
 Chains177
 Checking383
 Compact spare tire462
 If you have a flat tire460, 461
 Inflation pressure493
 Information498
 Pressure warning system383
 Replacing461
 Rotating tires383
 Size493
 Snow tires179
- Tools**461
- Total load capacity**175
- Touch screen**184
- Towing**
 Dinghy towing182
 Emergency towing429
 Trailer towing181
- TRAC (Traction control)**164
- Transmission**
 If the shift lever cannot be
 shifted from P472
 Mode select switch107
- S mode108
 Transmission106
- Trip meter**113
- Trunk**
 Opener29
 Trunk light31
 Wattage494
- Turn signal lights**
 Replacing light bulbs421
 Switch110
 Wattage494
- V** **Vanity lights**
 Vanity lights313
 Wattage494
- Vanity mirrors**313
- VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics
 Integrated Management)**165
- Vehicle identification number**487
- Vehicle load limits**175
- Ventilators**321
- VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio
 Steering)**164
- VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**164
- W** **Warning buzzers**
 Brake system438
 Downshifting108
 Open door440
 Seat belt reminder440
- Warning lights**
 Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ...439
 Brake system438
 Charging system438

ECB/VSC (Electronically Controlled Brake System/ Vehicle Stability Control).....	439
Electric power steering warning light.....	439
Low fuel level.....	440
Malfunction indicator lamp	439
Master warning light.....	441
Open door	440
Pre-collision system.....	439
Seat belt reminder light.....	440
SRS airbags.....	439
Tire pressure warning light.....	440
Warning messages	
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..	448
Brake Assist (BA)	448
Dynamic radar cruise control.....	446
Engine oil level.....	451
Engine oil maintenance.....	451
Engine oil pressure.....	444
Headlight.....	445
Hill-start assist control.....	448
Hood	449
Hybrid system.....	444, 453
Intuitive parking assist	446, 452, 456
Moon roof.....	450
Open door	449
Parking brake.....	450
Pre-Collision System	446, 452
Refueling.....	456
Rear lights system	445
Smart access system with push-button start.....	457
Steering lock.....	445, 459
Tire pressure warning system	445, 452
TRAC (Traction control system).....	448
Trunk	450
VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)	448
VSC/ECB (Vehicle Stability Control/Electronically Controlled Brake system)	448
Washer fluid	450
Washer	
Checking	382
Preparing and checking before winter	176
Switch.....	126
Washing and waxing.....	352
Weight	
Cargo capacity	172
Load limits	175
Weight.....	486
Wheels	397
Window glasses	50
Window lock switch	50
Windows	
Power windows.....	50
Rear window defogger.....	199
Washer	126
Windshield wipers	
Position.....	178
Windshield wipers	126
Winter driving tips.....	176
Wireless remote control	
Locking/Unlocking	22
Replacing the battery.....	401
WMA disc	224

What to do if... What to do if...

	A tire punctures	P. 460/ 461	If you have a flat tire
	The hybrid system does not start	P. 59	Hybrid vehicle immobilizer system
		P. 471	If the hybrid system will not start
		P. 476	If the 12 volt battery is discharged
	The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 472	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"
	The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 480	If your vehicle overheats
	Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
	The key is lost	P. 473	If you lose your keys
	The battery runs out	P. 476	If the 12 volt battery is discharged
	The doors cannot be locked	P. 25	Doors
	The horn begins to sound	P. 61	Alarm
	The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 483	If the vehicle becomes stuck

 The warning light or indicator light comes on P. 438 If the warning light turns on

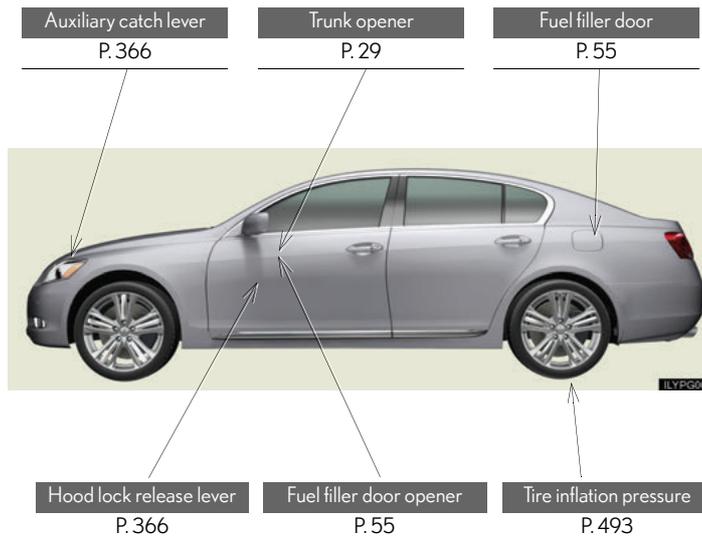


■ Warning lights

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p> Brake system warning light</p> <p>or</p> <p> P. 438</p> | <p> Malfunction indicator lamp</p> <p>or</p> <p> P. 439</p> |
| <p> ABS warning light</p> <p>or</p> <p> P. 439</p> | <p> Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 440</p> |
| <p> ECB*/VSC warning light P. 439</p> | <p> Tire pressure warning light P. 440</p> |
| <p> Low fuel level warning light P. 440</p> | <p> Electric power steering warning light P. 439</p> |
| <p> SRS warning light P. 439</p> | <p> Pre-collision system warning light P. 439</p> |
| <p> Open door warning light P. 440</p> | <p> Master warning light P. 441</p> |
| <p> Charging system warning light P. 438</p> | <p>*: Electronically Controlled Brake System</p> |

 The warning message is displayed P. 444 If the warning message is displayed

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity	17.2 gal. (65 L, 14.3 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only	P. 56, 488
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 493
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill)	With filter Without filter	qt. (L, Imp.qt.) 6.6 (6.3, 5.5) 6.2 (5.9, 5.2)
Engine oil type	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil Recommended oil viscosity: SAE 5W-30	P. 489